



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guide per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



KAIS.KÖN.HOF BIBLIOTHEK



20.644-B

ALT-

S.A. 26.D.21.



20644-B.

OTHER WORKS

PRINTED

FOR THE USE OF THE ABYSSINIAN MISSION.

BY REV. C. W. ISENBERG:

AMHARIC SPELLING BOOK. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

AMHARIC CATECHISM. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

AMHARIC GEOGRAPHY. 8vo. 3*s.* cloth.

HISTORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD, in AMHARIC. 8vo.—**PART I.**

History of the Old Covenant, to the Destruction of Jerusalem, and the Death of St. John.—**PART II.** History of the Church, from the Death of St. John, to our Times. 8vo. cloth, 16*s.*

DICTIONARY of the AMHARIC LANGUAGE. 4to. £2.

UNIVERSAL HISTORY in AMHARIC. 8vo. 4*s.*

VOCABULARY of the DANKALI LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8*d.*

BY REV. J. L. KRAPF:

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL, Five Chapters, in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6*d.*

GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE of the GALLA LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8*d.*

WORKS IN THE PRESS:

BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER for the United Church of England and Ireland, in AMHARIC, by Rev. C. W. ISENBERG. 8vo.

VOCABULARY of the GALLA LANGUAGE, by Rev. J. L. KRAPF. 12mo.

G R A M M A R
OF THE
A M H A R I C L A N G U A G E.

BY THE
REV. CHARLES WILLIAM ISENBERG,
AUTHOR OF THE "AMHARIC DICTIONARY,"
AND MISSIONARY OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY
IN EAST AFRICA.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY.

1842.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

P R E F A C E.

IN presenting this work to the Public, the Author offers his humble thanks to God, for having enabled him to accomplish it. He was aware, when he first set his hand to it, not only of its importance with regard to Abyssinia—its character, religion, history, and destinies—but also of the difficulty of the task which he had undertaken. There was previously no Amharic Grammar extant, except Ludolf's*; which, however it attests the superior talents of its author, considering the circumstances under which it was compiled, is but a feeble aid in the grammatical exhibition of the language. Nor was there any other literary source, on which the Author of this Grammar could draw, except the Amharic Bible, and those Amharic works which he himself had prepared. Under these circumstances, he had very often to feel out his way, by a recollection of the living language, in which he conversed with the Abyssinian people while residing among them. This recollection, however, was kept alive by the Author's having been, without interruption, occupied with the Amharic press, from his arrival in this country from Abyssinia up to this day. The preparation and publication of the Lexicon, immediately preceding his commencement of this Grammar, was peculiarly suited to prepare him for this work; for whilst, on the one hand, it laid open to him the whole of the materials of which that language is composed, as far as they are at present known, it furnished him also with ample opportunities to investigate the grammatical rules by which it is regulated. Every one, who has

* See Preface to my Amharic Dictionary.

a judgment in these matters, will discover, when comparing the Dictionary with the Grammar, that the Author's own knowledge of the language has improved as he has advanced in his editorial labours. But although he is aware of the imperfections of his own works, he feels confident that a diligent study of this Grammar will, under the blessing of the Almighty, materially assist any Student in acquiring an accurate knowledge of the Amharic Language.

Although there is, as yet, no literature in the Amharic Language, its study is of considerable importance to Orientalists. Its Semitic origin cannot be questioned : it is evident in every feature. A little attention to what is said in this Grammar on the Nouns and Verbs, shows that it possesses a vigour and flexibility capable of expressing any idea ; and that it may be very useful in throwing light on many subjects of difficulty in the cognate languages, especially the Hebrew, Syriac, and Coptic. Such a language, it is but reasonable to suppose, will be found rich in words. The Dictionary, which gives only those words which we at present possess, contains about 7000 ; and we may anticipate that a longer and more intimate acquaintance with the people of Abyssinia will furnish us with a great many more, and lead to important results, not only in reference to the Semitic, but also to the African Languages. With the latter the Amharic has much mutual interchange ; as the Author has had opportunities to observe, in respect to the languages of the Danakil*, the Somal, the Gallas†, the Argobbans, the natives of Harrar (or Arargê), and those of Garaguê. But the advantages to be derived from the study of this language, which should be accompanied by that of its parent language, the Ethiopic, are not merely of a scientific

* See Dankali Vocabulary.

† See the Rev. J. L. Kräf's Galla Grammar, his Translation of St. Matthew's Gospel, and his Galla Vocabulary.

nature. When the covetous Abyssinian offers his hidden treasures to the speculating European—when he opens his barriers to the travelling naturalist, to explore his Ambas and his K'wallas—when that country, which stands single in the whole history of Eastern Nations, as a Christian State that was not overwhelmed by the sweeping floods of Islamism, attracts different and, in some measure, conflicting interests of religion, philanthropy and politics—the study of the living Abyssinian Languages, among which the Amharic stands foremost, will become indispensable; as is already experienced by those whom various motives induce to travel in Abyssinia.

With regard to the Church Missionary Society, the Author begs to repeat the same expressions of sincere gratitude, respect and solicitude, which he has uttered in the Preface to his Dictionary. Whatever the result of the present movements concerning Abyssinia and its future destinies may be; whether that nation is still to remain in its present uncivilized condition; whether it be doomed to fall a prey to that Spiritual Power which is assiduously endeavouring to regain the influence which it formerly possessed for a time, or whether it will open itself to the sound of the Gospel and its accompanying temporal and eternal blessings, and emerge into the light of truth and civilization; this Society has been the first instrument, in the hand of God, to offer the hand of Christian assistance and fellowship to them. If it pleases God to prosper their labours of love, they will be amply rewarded for all the difficulties and disappointments they have been subjected to, or which may be still awaiting them. May His blessing be upon them!

C. W. ISENBERG.

LONDON, Jan. 4, 1842.

ERRATA.

<i>Page</i>	<i>Line</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>Read</i>	<i>for</i>
18	12	top,	First	Second.
28	11	...	ՃՓՌ:	ՃՓՇ:
31	12	...	ՓԸՓԸ:	ՓԸՓԸ:
38	4	bottom,	ՀՃԱ-Ք:	ՀՃԱ-Ք:
39	11	...	Form	From.
42	11	...	Twelfth	Eleventh.
48	17	top,	Suffixes	all Suffixes.
53	14	...	ՄԵՐ-Դ:	ՄԵՐ-Դ:
58	13	...	ՏԻՆՈ:	ՏԻՆՈՒ:
63	8	...	III.	3.
..	9	...	IV.	4.
64	14	...	ՀՃ:	ՀՃ:
65	23	...	Regular Triliteral	Triliteral.
81	4	...	conjugation	verb.
83	5	bottom,	ՄԵՐՂԸ:	ՄԵՐՂԸ:
88	8	...	ՔՈՂՈՃԱ:	ՔՈՂՈՃԱ:
..	2	...	ՔՈՂՈՃ:	ՔՈՂՈՃ:
90	7	top,	ՔՃԱԾՂ:	ՔՃԱԾՂ:
93	17	...	the peculiarities	and the peculiarities.
..	20	...	Radical	Conjugation.
119	10	...	ՌԵՊԻՄ:	ՌԵՊԻՄ:
129	4	...	ՀԱԽԱԽՄ:	ՀԱԽԱԽՄ:
133	6	...	ԽՈ-ՈՂԱ:	ԽՈ-ՈՂԱ:
139	10	...	ԲԹՋՔՍ:	ԲԹՋՔՍ:
145	5	bottom,	ՔՄԵՐ-ՊՐԴ:	ՔՄԵՐ-ՊՐԴ:
146	11	...	thee	them.
147	10	...	ՄԵՐ-ՊՎՔԴԱ:	ՄԵՐ-ՊՎՔԴԱ:
...	1	...	chapters	chapter.
149	16	top,	ԿԳԾ:	ԿԳԾ:
...	26	...	ՃՓՓ:	ՃՓՓ:
150	9	...	"without"	"within."
152	6	...	ԱՊՄՅԱԾ:	ԱՊՄՅԱԾ:
158	20	...	Պ—:	Ի—:
168	16	...	ՌՃՃ:	ՌՃՃ:
174	15	...	show	to show.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION	PAGE 1.
--------------	---------

PART I. PHONOLOGY.

ON THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

CHAP. I. On the Amharic Alphabet	3
CHAP. II. Numerical Order and Names of the Letters	4
CHAP. III. Virtue, Organical Classification, and Pronunciation of the Letters,	6
CHAP. IV. Seven Vocal Orders of the Abyssinian Letters	8
CHAP. V. On Syllabification	11
CHAP. VI. On Accentuation, and Interpunctuation	13
CHAP. VII. Various Changes of Letters:	
1. Addition	16
2. Contraction	16
3. Elision	18
4. Changes produced and undergone by the letter ¶ : and its corresponding Vowels, I and Ê	19
5. Changes produced and undergone by the letter Ѡ : and its corresponding Vowels, U and O	20
6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs	21
7. Reduplication of Letters	21
8. Exchange of Letters	21
9. Changes occurring with the Liquid Letters	22
10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters	22

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

Preliminary Remarks	23
CHAP. I. On the Nouns:	
SECT. I. Formation	24
SECT. II. Species	35
SECT. III. Gender	36
SECT. IV. Number	38
SECT. V. Declension	40
CHAP. II. On the Numerals	41

CONTENTS.

CHAP. III. On the Pronouns :

SECT. I.	Separable Personal Pronouns	43
SECT. II.	Separable Possessive Pronouns	45
SECT. III.	Demonstrative Pronouns	45
SECT. IV.	Interrogative Pronouns	46
SECT. V.	Reflective Pronouns	47
SECT. VI.	Separable Distributive Pronoun	47
SECT. VII.	Indefinite Pronouns	48
SECT. VIII. Inseparable Pronouns :		
1.	Personal Suffixes to Verbs	48
2.	Possessive Suffixes to Nouns	49
3.	Prefixed Relative Pronouns	50
4.	Prefixed Distributive Pronoun	50

CHAP. IV. On the Verbs :

SECT. I.	Formation and Quality	50
SECT. II.	Various Derivations (Forms or Voices)	52
List of Conjugations (Derivations, Voices) of the Regular and Perfect Trilateral Verb		53
Other Classes :		
i.	Trilaterals whose first Radical is a Guttural	55
ii.	Geminant Trilaterals	56
iii.	Geminants whose first Radical is a Guttural	56
iv.	Perfect Biliterals	56
v.	Imperfect Biliterals of Prima ח	57
vi.	Defective Verbs :	
1.	Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural at the End	57
2.	Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle	58
3.	Verbs with an Absorbed פ : in the Middle	58
4.	Verbs with an Absorbed ת : in the Middle	58
5.	Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadrilaterals	58
6.	Verbs doubly Imperfect	59
vii. Quadrilateral and Pluriliteral Verbs :		
1.	Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals	59
2.	Derivatives from Trilaterals, having one Radical dou- bled and transposed	60
3.	Geminants	60
4.	Quadrilaterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals	61

CONTENTS.

SECT. III. Flexion :	
I. Moods - - - - -	61
II. Tenses - - - - -	62
III. Number - - - - -	63
IV. Persons - - - - -	63
SECT. IV. Conjugation :	
Auxiliaries חָא: וְיָהִי: and וְיָדַיִם: - - - - -	64
1. Conjugation of the Perfect and Regular Trilateral Verbs	65
2. Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of Trilateral Verbs:	
I. Trilateral Verbs whose first Radical is A (חָ: or וְ:)	93
II. Trilateral Geminants - - - - -	96
III. Geminants whose first Radical is חָ: - - - - -	102
3. Conjugation of Bilingual Verbs:	
I. Perfect Bilinguals - - - - -	104
II. Imperfect Bilinguals <i>prima radicalis</i> חָ: - - - - -	108
III. Contracted Bilinguals:	
(aa) With Absorbed Guttural at the End - - - - -	113
(bb) With Absorbed Guttural in the Middle - - - - -	116
(cc) With Absorbed P: in the Middle - - - - -	118
(dd) With Absorbed וְ: in the middle - - - - -	120
IV. Doubly Imperfect Bilinguals;	
(aa) Doubly Contracted - - - - -	123
(bb) Beginning with חָ: and terminating with an Absorbed Guttural - - - - -	124
(cc) Beginning with P: , which absorbs a Guttural,	126
4. Conjugations of Quadrilateral and Plurilateral Verbs:	
I. Reduplicated and Transposed Bilinguals - - - - -	128
II. Derivates from Trilaterals, having one Radical doubled and transposed - - - - -	131
III. Geminants - - - - -	132
IV. Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals,	134
5. Defective and Anomalous Verbs - - - - -	135
SECT. V. Connection of Pronouns with Verbs - - - - -	142
CHAP. V. On the Adverbs - - - - -	148
CHAP. VI. On the Prepositions - - - - -	153
CHAP. VII. On the Conjunctions - - - - -	158
CHAP. VIII. On the Interjections - - - - -	159

CONTENTS.

PART III. SYNTAX.

CHAP. I. Nature of Sentences - - - - -	161
CHAP. II. Subject and Attribute - - - - -	162
CHAP. III. Uses and Construction of the Noun:	
A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives - - - - -	164
B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives - - - - -	165
C. Number of Nouns - - - - -	165
D. Cases of Declension - - - - -	166
CHAP. IV. Degrees of Comparison - - - - -	170
CHAP. V. On the Numerals - - - - -	171
CHAP. VI. Syntax of the Separable Pronouns - - - - -	172
CHAP. VII. On the Affixed Pronouns - - - - -	173
CHAP. VIII. Construction of the Verb:	
SECT. I. On the Tenses - - - - -	174
SECT. II. On the Moods - - - - -	176
SECT. III. Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence - - - - -	177
CHAP. IX. Construction of the remaining Parts of Speech - - - - -	178

PART IV.

1. Conversational Modes of Salutation - - - - -	179
2. Exercises - - - - -	183

AMHARIC GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

ON THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE IN GENERAL.

I. *The Amharic Language* (አማርኛ : ብንቃ፡), a grammatical delineation of which the following pages propose to give, is that Abyssinian Dialect, which is spoken by the greater part of the population of Abyssinia: it prevails in all the provinces of Abyssinia lying between the Taccazé and the Abay or Abyssinian Nile, and in the kingdom of Shoa; and enters besides, extensively, into the languages of Argobba and Harrar. Its next cognate dialect is the *Tigrē Language* (ትግራኛ : ብንቃ፡); which is spoken by the inhabitants of Tigrē or the N.E. part of Abyssinia, and has its modifications in the Dumhoeto Dialect at Massowa, and the coast N. of that island, and in the language of Gurāguē. Both the Amharic and the Tigrē Languages are modifications of the Ancient *Ethiopic* or *Geez* (ፊት : ዘዴ፡), to which they bear nearly the same relation as some of our Modern European Languages to the Latin; *viz.* that of origin and derivation. However, the present language of Tigrē has preserved a greater similarity to the Ethiopic, and received much less mixture from other languages than the Amharic; the Amhāra people being of a more changeable character, and having had intercourse with a greater variety of foreign nations than their Tigrē brethren.

II. The denomination "Amharic," which this language has received, is obviously attributable to the province called *Amhāra*, situate between Shoa, Godjam, Bagameder, Lasta, and Angot. That province, which is now the seat of the Yedjows, Argobbans, and other Galla tribes—who partly speak the Argobba dialect, partly the Galla language—must have been considered the chief province of Abyssinia at the time the language obtained that name: for not only have all the countries in which the same language is spoken—excepting Shoa and Efat, *i.e.* all the N.W.

countries of Abyssinia to the W. of the Taccazzé—been called Amhāra, but the natives also frequently apply it to their religion; so that the appellation *Amharic* is used synonymously with *Christian*, although at present the greater part of the population of that province are Mohammedans. But in what the superiority of that province consisted, and the time when it was so pre-eminent, remains still a matter of inquiry: for the reasons which Ludolf assigns, that Amhāra was in the neighbourhood of Shoa, from which the Royal Family of Solomon, which spoke this language, was restored, after the downfal of the Zagæan line; and that Amba Geshen (better *Gēshē*), where subsequently the Princes of that family were confined, was situate in Amhāra—seem rather unsatisfactory; nor have we at present to offer any thing better in lieu of them.

III. From the fact of the Amharic Language being a descendant of the Ethiopic—which will be evident, from a superficial knowledge of both—it claims the same *affinity to the Semitic family* as its parent; although it has adopted other forms and words from surrounding nations, which bear no relation to that family. A knowledge, therefore, of any of the Semitic Dialects, such as the Hebrew and the Arabic, facilitates, to a great extent, the study of the Amharic. We shall, in the course of this work, have frequent occasions to refer to the Arabic and the Hebrew; although it will be our endeavour also to suit the capacity of those who may have had no opportunity of learning any but European languages.

IV. According to the nature of a Grammar, this work will be arranged under the following heads: 1. *Phonology*; 2. *Etymology*; 3. *Syntax*:—treating, in the First Part, on the Sounds and Letters; in the Second, on the different Parts of Speech; and in the Third, on the Grammatical Construction of Words into Sentences. There is, as yet, no occasion to speak on Amharic Prosody; but instead of this, we shall annex a variety of Amharic expressions, and a few Exercises.

V. 𠂌	VI. 𠂊	VII. 𠂋
Bohemian ě, or iĕ, as German jeder	Vowelless or short ě, as in since, summer	o usually sharp, as in so, or like wo
𠁥𠁻𠁩 : hāmis (fifth)	𠁥𠁻𠁩 : sādis (sixth)	𠁥𠁻𠁩 : sābē' (seventh)
𠂔 : hě (Boh.)	𠂔 : hě, or h	𠂔 : ho or hwo
ѧ : lě ..	ѧ : lě .. l	ѧ : lo .. luo
ѧ : hě ..	ѧ : hě .. h	ѧ : ho .. hwo
ѹ : mě ..	ѹ : mě .. m	ѹ : mo .. muo
ԝ : sě ..	ԝ : sě .. s	ԝ : so .. suo
Ը : rě ..	Ը : rě .. r	Ը : ro .. ruo
Ը : sě ..	Ը : sě .. s	Ը : so .. suo
Ը : shě ..	Ը : shě .. sh	Ը : sho .. shuo
Փ : k'ě ..	Փ : k'ě .. k'	Փ : k'o .. k'uo
ռ : bě ..	ռ : bě .. b	ռ : bo .. buo
՚ : tě ..	՚ : tě .. t	՚ : toe .. tuo
՚ : tshě ..	՚ : tsh .. tsh	՚ : tsho .. tshuo
՚ : hě ..	՚ : hě .. h	՚ : ho .. huo
՚ : ně ..	՚ : ně .. n	՚ : no .. nuo
՚ : gně ..	՚ : gně .. gn	՚ : gno .. gnuo
՚ : ě ..	՚ : ě	՚ : o .. uo

PART I.—PHONOLOGY.

ON THE
SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE.~~~~~
CHAP. I.

ON THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

THE Amharic Language is written with the same letters as the Ethiopic; each letter varying in seven different forms, in order to express different sounds; Vowels and Consonants not being separated. But besides the Twenty-six Ethiopic, the Amharic Language has seven peculiar Orders of Letters, which serve to express sounds not existing in the former: they are the following:

በ:	ቃ:	ጂ:	ጌ:	ጉ:	ጊ:	ጋ:
ቍ:	ቁ:	ቃ:	ቁ:	ቈ:	ቁ:	ቁ:
ቋ:	ቁ:	ቋ:	ቁ:	ቋ:	ቁ:	ቁ:
ቊ:						
ቋ:						
ቌ:						
ቊ:						

These, added to the 26 Ethiopic orders, give to the Amharic Alphabet the number of 33 orders of letters; that is, each order consisting of 7 forms or characters, 231 different characters. Add to these the 4 times 5, i.e. 20 Diphthongs, you have 251; which, to commit to memory, call for the close application of the student. The Alphabetical Table opposite embodies them all; giving a correct exhibition of the numerical arrangement of the letters, with their names and value; and the phonical order, power, and Ethiopical designation of the seven different orders, with the pronunciation affixed in English to each character.

The Abyssinian Ciphers are as follow:

፩: 1. ይ: 2. መ: 3. ባ: 4. ዕ: 5. ደ: 6. ዓ: 7. ዘ: 8. ዕ: 9. የ: 10.
 ክ: 11. ኮ: 12. ኮ: 13. ኮ: 14. ኮ: 15. ኮ: 16. ኮ: 17. ኮ: 18. ኮ: 19. ኮ: 20.
 ቦ: 30. ባ: 40. ባ: 50. ደ: 60. ዕ: 70. ዘ: 80. ዓ: 90. የ: 100.
 ዕ: 200. ኮ: 1000. ዕ: 2000. ዕ: or ዕ: 10000. ዕ: 100000.

NOTE.—A greater number of Diphthongs might have been added; as the Abyssinians, not being accustomed to write the language they speak, like to contract several sounds together, and to express them by single characters. Ludolf has given, in his Amharic Grammar, several specimens, showing how they apply this to foreign languages. We observe, here, that we have seen several instances of the same mode of proceeding in their own language: especially do they like to combine the fourth with the sixth form; e.g. **ተ**: twā, for **ተዋ፡፡** **ፋ**: fwā, for **ፋዋ፡፡** **ሙ**: mwā, for **ሙዋ፡፡** &c. But as those figures have not been generally adopted, and the number of characters is already large enough, and suited to express almost any sound, we have abstained from mentioning them in the Alphabet; noticing them here only, in order to put those on their guard who may happen, in their intercourse with Abyssinians, to meet such uncouth figures, that they may not be frightened.



CHAP. II.

NUMERICAL ORDER, AND NAMES OF THE LETTERS.

1. For the general Order, in which these letters follow each other, no reason can be assigned; as it has no analogy in other languages, nor any foundation in the natural developement of sound from the organs of speech, but seems to have been arbitrarily put together. Exceptions are, the succession of **ሀ**: and **ሁ፡፡** **ተ**: and **ተ፡፡** **ለ**: and **ለ፡፡** **ኩ**: and **ኩ፡፡** **ኬ**: and **ኬ፡፡** **ኮ**: and **ኮ፡፡** and **ኰ**: (for the resemblance of figure) **ኴ**: and **ኴ፡፡**
2. The Names of the letters have been delivered to us from remote antiquity; and as most of them, if not all, are significant, we think it but proper to preserve them. They must have been formerly in general use among the Abyssinians, else it is not conceivable how they should have been transmitted to Europeans: but the natives of the present day know nothing about them, except from the schools of the Missionaries.*
3. The signification of most of the names of the letters is clear: they refer to the sound they express, adding the adjective termination *awi*, contracted into *ai*, or mis-spelled *oi*, for the masculine, and *awit*, *äüt*, *ait*, or *ät*, for the

* This, however, is no reason to omit them; because the Abyssinians do not at all dislike to have names put to their hitherto unnamed letters; many of which are the same as those which they know, from the Psalms, to belong to the sacred language of the Old Testament. Many of the most learned Abyssinians have applied to the Missionaries for the express purpose of learning the names of their own letters; and thought to have gained an invaluable treasure, when they had learned them.

feminine gender. A short analysis of these names, as far as it can be given, will establish this statement.

1. **U**: Hoï, **ሀ**: for **ሁ**; or **ሁ**: the *h* letter.
2. **ለ**: Lāwī, **ለ**: the *l* letter.
3. **ሐ**: Hāūt, **ሐ**: (f.) for **ሐ**: the *h* letter.
4. **መ**: Māi, **መ**: for **መ**: the *m* letter.
5. **ሮ**: Sāūt, **ሮ**: for **ሮ**: (fem.) the *s* letter.
7. **ሰ**: Sāt, **ሰ**: for **ሰ**: the *s* letter.
8. **ሻ**: Shāt, **ሻ**: for **ሻ**::
11. **ተ**: Tāwī, **ተ**::
12. **ቻ**: Tshāwī, **ቻ**::
19. **ወ**: Wāwī, **ወ**::
21. **ዘ**: Zāī, **ዘ**: for **ዘ**::
22. **ዣ**: Zāī (French *j*), **ዣ**: for **ዣ**::
27. **ጠ**: Tāit, **ጠ**: for **ጠ**::
28. **ጩ**: Tshāit, **ጩ**: for **ጩ**::
29. **ጂ**: Pāit, **ጂ**: for **ጂ**::

The following names are derived from the cognate Semitic Dialects, probably from the Hebrew, since they have the names of the Hebrew letters in the Psalms:

6.	ሩ :	Rē-ěs,	ርዕስ :	Heb.	ኔ	Rēsh.
9.	ፁ :	Kāf,	ፁ :	..	ካ	Kof.
10.	በ :	Bêt,	በ :	..	በ	Bêt.
16.	አ :	Alf,	አልፍ :	..	አ	Alef.
17.	ካ :	Kāf,	ካፍ :	..	ካ	Kāf.
20.	አ :	Äin,	አይን :	..	ያ	Äin.
26.	ገ :	Geml,	ገምል :	..	ገ	Gimel.

With regard to their significations, the student is referred to the Hebrew Lexicon.

Concerning the rest, the signification of which is not so clear, we leave them for the amusement of such as will take the trouble of searching in the Ethiopic *and the cognate dialects*.



CHAP. III.

ON THE VIRTUE, ORGANICAL CLASSIFICATION, AND PRONUNCIATION
OF THE LETTERS, CONSIDERING THEM AS SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

1. As to the *VIRTUE* of the letters, we must state, first of all, that Consonants and Vowels are combined in the same characters; and on this account, each letter is able to present a syllable by itself. But laying aside, for the present, the Vowel question, we proceed at once to *CLASSIFY* the letters according to the organs chiefly concerned in their pronunciation.

2. According to the *organs*, the letters are divided—

- A. In *Gutturals*: **U**: **ħ**: **ȝ**: **ነ**: **አ**: **ሀ**:: .
- B. In *Palatals*: **Φ**: **ኩ**: **ሮ**: **ገ**::
- C. In *Linguals* and *Dentals*: **ል**: **ወ**: **ጋ**: **ሰ**: **ነ**: **ተ**: **ጥ**: **ቃ**: **ኩ**:
ዘ: **ኝ**: **ኩ**: **ሙ**: **ኝ**: **ሮ**::
- D. In *Labials*: **ወ**: **በ**: **ወ**: **ኝ**: **ኩ**: **ጥ**::
- E. *Nasal*: **ኝ**::

3. In speaking on the *PRONUNCIATION* of these letters, we must refer to the Ancient Ethiopic, the various dialects of Abyssinia, especially the Tigrē, and the cognate Semitic Languages.

A. The *Gutturals*.—In the present Amharic, **U**: **ħ**: and **ȝ**: are pronounced alike, like *h* in *horse*, and are often exchanged for **ነ**::, thus entirely dropping the aspiration. The Tigrē language shows us, however, that each of these letters must have formerly expressed a distinct and different sound; for in it, **U**: sounds like our *h* in *horse*, and answers the Arabic *z*, and the Hebrew **װ**. **ħ**: is pronounced with a pressure in the lower part of the throat, like the Arabic **ڙ**; **ȝ**: like the Swiss *ch*, the Arabic **ڙ**, and the Hebrew **ڻ**; and **ነ**: like the Scotch and German *ch*, in *loch*, *nicht*, and answering the Hebrew **ׁ** without the Dagesh. This pronunciation of the **ነ**: is equally in use in the Amharic language.

አ: and **ሀ**: are both pronounced alike, as the Greek *Spiritus lenis* ('); but in the Tigrē they are different among each other, **አ**: being like *Spiritus lenis*, **ሉ**, or **ኩ**, and **ሀ**: like the Arabic *c* and Hebrew *y*, with the same pressure in the throat as the **ڙ**, but without the aspiration.

B. The *Palatals*:

Φ: corresponds with **ኩ** in the Hebrew, and with **ȝ** in the Arabic Language. On account of its peculiar pronunciation, we may call it an *explosive* letter, such as **ኩ**: **ሙ**: and **ኝ**: in the third, and **ኩ**: in the

fourth class: it is a sudden explosion of breath from the palate, after the latter has been spasmodically contracted. We have endeavoured to represent this pronunciation, after the example of Ludolf, by writing K', but it must be heard before it can be conceived. This pronunciation, however, is not uniform, although general. In Tigrê, it is besides often pronounced like the Arabic ڙ, often like ڦ; in Shoa generally, like a mere Spiritus lenis ('), similar to the ڦ as pronounced by common people in Egypt. Thus the word ΤΡΦΠΛ: is pronounced in three or four different ways: in good language, Tâk'ab'bâlă; in Tigrê, Tâghâb'bâlă (تَغْبَلْ) and Tâkâb'bâlă (تَقْبَلْ); and in Shoa, Tâ-âb'bâlă.

ئ: sounds like our *k*, or *c* before consonants.

ڦ: is pronounced like *y* as consonant, or like the German *j* &c.

ڦ: is pronounced like our *g* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants.

C. The *Linguals* and *Dentals*:

ئ: like our *l*.

و: and ڻ: may originally (perhaps answering ڻ and ڻ, ڻ and ڻ) have sounded differently from each other: at present, they are pronounced alike, sounding like our *s*.

ڦ: sounds like our *r*.

ڻ: formed in the Amharic by the accession of the *i* sound to the ڻ: and ڻ:, is the same as ڻ, ڻ, and *sh*.

ڦ: is pronounced like ڦ, ڻ, and *t*.

ڦ: formed by combining a soft sibilation with ڦ, sounds like *tsh*, or rather like *t* with a German *j*.

ئ: is the same as our *n*.

ه: is like *z*.

ڦ: like the French *j*.

ڦ: is the same with our *d*.

ڦ: sounds like the English *j*, or rather like the German *dj*: it is often used to express the Arabic ڙ.

ئ: ڦ: and ڦ: are the same sort of letters in this class as the ڦ: in the Second, which we call Explosive; because they, as it were, explode from between the fore-part of the tongue and the roof of the mouth or the root of the teeth. We have in the Alphabet represented them by writing *t*, *tsh*, and *ts*. But as some more or less hissing seems to accompany this explosion, ئ: and ڦ: frequently interchange.

ڦ: is pronounced like *ts*, or the German *z*.

D. The *Labials*:

በ: is the same as our *m*.

በ: the same as our *b*. In Tigrē, it generally sounds like *v*, **ቁ**, or the Modern Greek β : and this pronunciation must have been formerly more general; for otherwise it seems unaccountable, how it could have been turned into a mere vowel *o*, as in **በቃ**; whereas the soft *b*, our *v*, being a mere condensation of that Vowel, was more liable to that change.

በ: is the same as *w*.

ቁ: the explosive letter of this class: the breath puffs off from between the lips, before the vowel is heard.

ቁ: is the same as **በ**, **ቁ**, and *f*.

ጥ: our *p*, merely used for foreign words.

E. The *Nasal ቀ*: is pronounced similar to the French and Italian *gn*, or rather like the Spanish *ñ*.

4. The letters are to be further divided, as in other Semitic Dialects, into *Radicals* and *Serviles*. Servile letters are those which are employed in the process of grammatical formation, derivation, and flexion: the radicals are never so employed. The serviles are often radical, though Radicals are never servile. The Servile Letters are,

አ፡ መ፡ ብ፡ ባ፡ ተ፡ ካ፡ ሂ፡ ወ፡ ክ፡ የ፡

CHAP. IV.

ON THE SEVEN VOCAL ORDERS OF THE ABYSSINIAN LETTERS.

1. As the Abyssinian Languages differ from the other Semitic Dialects (except the Coptic), in being written from the left to the right; so they are likewise different from them, as well as from most other languages, in the manner in which the Voices or Vowels are expressed.

2. This is done in the Abyssinian Languages, not, as in the other Semitic Dialects, by any smaller points or figures written above or below the line; nor, as in other languages, by a distinct sort of characters of equal value with the Vowelless Consonants; but by a system of changes which the original letter itself undergoes; each letter expressing *Consonant and Vowel in the same figure*, and *assuming seven different forms*, according to the Vowels which are attached to it; which forms (after Ludolf) we call *Orders of Letters*.

NOTE.—The terms “Consonant” and “Vowel” are not quite suitable to the Abyssinian Alphabet; as the Vowels themselves are but con-sonant, being inexpressible by themselves; and the Consonants being, as appears from the Sixth Order, in form more independent than the Vowels: but to be understood, we must use the expression.

3. The Seven different *Voices* or *Vowels* expressed by these Seven Orders are these:

A. Short ā, as in *fat, lad, &c.*; answering the Fat-ha (‿) in the Arabic, and the Patach (‿) in the Hebrew. Like the former, it is modifiable, approaching the ē sound, or the short Hebrew Segol (ׁ).

B. ū, as in *full, put, lucid*; or ö, as in *move*; or oo, as in *fool, &c.*

C. ī, as in *pin, finger, hinder*; or ee, as in *bee, see*; or ea, as in *read, sea*; or e, as in *scene*.

D. ī, as in *far, father, rather*.

E. ē or ê; a sharp ê, with a slight ī sound before it, as in the Slavonian Dialects; as the German *je*, “ever,” or the English *yea*.

F. ē or ý, as in *liv-er, ber-rý*. This order also is often mute or vowelless, as in the English and French Languages the mute ē. In fact, it completely resembles the Shwa simplex (ׁ) of the Hebrew Language.

G. ö, generally sharp, as in *so*; or with w before it, as in *woe, wonder*.

4. In order to express these seven sounds by each letter, the Abyssinians have adopted the following plan:

A. The *Original Form* is used for the expression of the *First Vowel* (ā). It therefore is called, with its Ethiopic name, ተዕዝ: Gē-ěz, which signifies “original”; and is therefore applied to the Ethiopic Language in general (አማርኛ: ተዕዝ:), in order to distinguish it from any translation. In reference to the letter forms, it means the original, simple, unaltered form, U: A: ኃ: &c.

B. The *Second Vowel* (ū), which is called ክአብ: Kā-ēb, i.e. “altered,” “second,” is expressed by the affixion of a point (·) to the right-hand side of the letter, generally in the middle (U: Φ: መዕ: እ:); in four instances at the bottom (ጋ: ግ: ስ: ሪ:); and in one instance, under the letter (ጋ:).

C. The *Third Vowel* (ī), which is called ሳልሱ: Sälēs, i.e. “third,” is generally represented by a similar point annexed to the foot of the letter on the right side, and below the line, (አ: ባ: እ: ካ: ስ:). Where the original has no foot (i.e. line going downwards), a foot is formed; and in

order thereby not to enlarge the general size of the letter, the rest is diminished where it has been thought necessary (**Ψ**: **ω**: **ψ**: **φ**: **χ**). Where the original has a point below, that is turned upwards (**ζ**: **ς**). An exception is, **ῃ**::

D. The *Fourth Vowel* (ā), called **Ζ·ΠΩ**: Rābē' "the fourth," effects seven different changes:

- (a) A foot line is made as in the preceding order, but without point: **Ψ**: **ω**: **ψ**: **φ**: **χ**: **ῃ**: **ς**::
- (b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **Λ**: **Ϛ**: **Ϛ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**::
- (c) A short horizontal line with point, is added, to the left at the bottom: **Φ**: **Ϛ**: **Ϛ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**::
- (d) The same added to the right at the head: **Ϛ**: doubled **Ϛ**::
- (e) Foot line broken: **Ζ**::
- (f) Foot point to the left shortened: **Ϛ**: **Ϛ̄**:

E. The change effected by the *Fifth Vowel* (ê), called **ΖΨΩϚ**: Hāmēs "fifth," is simple: it consists in adding a small circular line or eye to the right side at the bottom, or in the middle: in instances where the letter has received a foot line in the two preceding forms, at the bottom of that line; e.g. **Ψ**: **Λ**: **Ϛ**: **Ϛ̄**: **Ϟ**: &c.

F. The greatest diversity is presented by the *Sixth Order* (ě or č) **Ϛ·Ϛ̄·Ϛ̄**: i.e. "sixth." Instead of analyzing it, we recommend the scholar to examine that column himself in the Alphabet.

G. The *Seventh Vowel* (o) **Ϛ·Ϛ̄·Ϛ̄**: Sābē', i.e. "seventh," effects the following changes:

- (a) A small circular line is formed at the top: **Ϣ**: **Ϩ**: **Ϩ̄**: **Ϩ**: **Ϩ̄**: **Ϩ**: **Ϩ̄**: **Ϩ**: **Ϩ̄**::
- (b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **Ϛ**: **Ϛ̄**: **Ϛ̄̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**: **Ϟ**: **Ϟ̄**::
- (c) Foot lines on the left side or in the middle are formed: **ϙ**: **ϙ̄**: **ϙ**: **ϙ̄**: **ϙ**: **ϙ̄**::
- (d) Other forms are, **ϙ**: **ϙ̄**: **ϙ**: **ϙ̄**::

5. As for the *quantity* of the vowels, it must be said, that those of the First and Sixth Order are constantly *short*; those of the Fourth and Fifth constantly *long*; and the rest are sometimes long, sometimes short.

NOTE.—Concerning the Diphthongs, as their pronunciation presents no difficulty, nothing remains to be said except what has been mentioned in Chap. I.



CHAP. V.

ON SYLLABIFICATION.

1. In the Abyssinian Languages, each letter, being Consonant and Vowel in the same figure, is able to constitute a *Syllable*; e.g. ነ፡ nă-gă-ră; የ፡ ně-fā-kě. Such syllables, formed by single letters, we may call *simple* or *open syllables*.

2. But although this is the case, they *can* combine two or three letters (not more) together, to form one syllable; which will be called, if consisting of two letters, a *closed*; if of three, a *compound* syllable. Thus, e.g. ቁ፡ k'äl, "word," is closed; አ፡ hězb, "people," is compound.

3. This is performed with the assistance of the Sixth Order; the vowel of which being short, and rather a semi-vowel, or the same thing as the Hebrew Shwā (ָ), is liable to become *mute*. Whenever this occurs, its letter must be added either to the preceding or to the following letter, in order to be pronouncible; e.g. ገ፡ gă-r, "meek." ቤ፡ běl-hā-t, "dexterity."

4. The question then is, *When is the letter of the Sixth Order mute or vowel-less?* A few general rules, which will answer it, shall be laid down here.

A. Letters of the Sixth Order are *MUTE at the end of words* generally; e.g. የ፡ här, "silk"; ቁ፡ k'äl, "word"; ነ፡ năgär, "word," "thing"; ተ፡ tsa-häy, "sun"; ው፡ a-lam, "world."

NOTE.—Seeming deviations, but no real ones, are those Ethiopic words which in the Amharic have been abbreviated: in such instances, the final letter of this form is not vowelless, reminding of the guttural letter, which is no longer written, but still pronounced:

ስ፡ să-mě, "wax." Eth. ተ፡ să-mě::

የ፡ bě-rě, "pencil." Eth. ተ፡ bě-rě::

እ፡ en-djy, "but." Eth. ተ፡ en-djy::

A real exception is this, which occurs in Feminine terminations of Pronouns or Verbs, in the Second Person Singular of the Feminine Gender, which are sometimes written in the third, sometimes in the sixth form, and may be pronounced or not; e.g. እ፡ better እ፡ an-tshy, "thou (female)!" ቁ፡ or ቁ፡ k'ä-dj, or k'ä-djy, "draw (thou female)!"

B. The same letters *remain MUTE*, when the words to which they belong, receive such additions at the end, by which their form is not changed: e.g. ተ፡ tshär, "kind." ተ፡ tshär-nät, "kindness." ቁ፡ bā-l, "husband," "owner." ቁ፡ bāl-têt, "widow."

NOTE.—An exception is ቁ፡ k'ä-lě-tshä, "Sorcerer," "soothsayer."

C. When two letters of this order meet together at the end of a vowel, both are mute, unless want of organic affinity, or gemination, prevents their being so; but when such a word is augmented at the end, the last letter of this order is sounded:

(a) ՃԾՓ: dă-rk', "dry."	ԼԹՐ: lă-mts', "leprosy."
ՄԾՀ: mă-rz, "poison."	ՓՅՀ: k'ă-nd, "horn."
ԹԾՅ: ā-ÿn, "eye."	
(b) ՃԳՄ: lĕ-gĕm, "superficiality."	Գ-ՌԻ: gĕ-bĕz, "hypocrite."
ՃՔՄ: ă-k'ĕm, "measure."	ՃԾԵ: ă-tsh'yr, "short."
(c) ՌՄԳՄ: sĕ-mĕm, "harmony."	ՆՃԱ: ē-lĕl, "huzzah!"
ԽՏՌ: kĕ-tĕt, "perfection," "fulness."	
(d) ՔՃՌԻ: k'ĕd-sĕ-nă, "holiness."	ՀՊԾԲՒ: zĕm-dĕ-nă, "relationship."

D. When a letter of the sixth form commences a word, its vowel is generally sounded:

ՃՃԴ: lĕ-dăt, "birth."	ԽՃ: kĕ-fū, "bad."
ՈՈՎ: sĕ-tăng, "give me."	ԽՃՄԴ: kĕ-rămt.

E. In triliteral words, where all the three letters are of the sixth order, the first is generally sounded; the two following art not:

ԽԿԱ: hĕ-zb, "people."	ՔՃՓ: ts'ĕ-dk', "righteousness."
ՃԿՓ: dĕ-nk', "wonder."	ՀԾՄ: ē-rm, "a thing prohibited."
ԾՈԴ: rĕ-st, "heritage."	ՄԾՈԴ: mĕ-sht, "wife."

F. In triliteral words, where the two first letters are of the sixth order, the first is sounded; the second is not:

ԳԾԸ: gĕ-r-mă, "majesty."	ՃՆՋ: ē-n-djă, "I do not know."
ՊՊՎ: gĕ-m-dja, "muslin cloth."	

But in many cases the second letter also is sounded:

ԳՄԼ: gĕ-sĕ-lă, "brown leopard."	ՓՄԾԻ: k'ĕ-mĕ-shă, "a bit."
ՃՋԴ: ē-djĕ-gĕ, "sleeve."	

G. In quadrilateral words, beginning with two letters of the sixth order, and terminating in —Դ: feminine, the first letter is sounded; the second is mute:

ԳՃՈԴ: fĕ-l-tăt, "megrims."	ՃԾՎԴ: fĕ-r-hăt, "fear."
ՑԵԴԴ: nĕ-f-găt, "avarice."	Յ-ՌԵԴ: nĕ-b-rat, "state."

H. In quadrilateral feminine adjectives, whose letters are all of this order, the first and second letters are sounded, whilst the rest are mute:

፩፻፻፻: nē-ts'ē-ht, "pure." **፩፻፻፻**: k'ē-dē-st, "holy."

፩፻፻፻: rē-kē-st, "impure." **፩፻፻፻**: ts'ē-dē-k't, "righteous."

I. In quadrilateral words, whose three first letters are of the sixth order, the first and second are generally sounded, whilst the third is mute, unless obviated by Lit. C.:

፩፻፻፻: ē-lē-l-tā, "the shouting." **፩፻፻፻**: nē-ts'ē-h-nā, "purity."

J. In plurilaterals, beginning with three letters of this order, these are generally formed into one syllable; either the first and third, or the second and third letters being mute:

፩፻፻፻፻: Krē-s-fos, "Christ." **፩፻፻፻፻**: frē-m-biā, "breast-bone."

NOTE.—These rules will meet most cases: we refrain from adding more at this place, as it would swell this chapter to too large an extent; while in the further course of the Grammar, especially in those parts which treat on the Pronouns and the Verbs, the rest will be easily deduced.



CHAP. VI.

ON ACCENTUATION, AND POINTS OF DISTINCTION.

I. The Abyssinians have no marks for their accents. Some general Rules for Accentuation are as follow:—

A. In words consisting of long and short syllables (long and short either by the number of letters or by the quantity of vowels), the long syllable generally has the accent:

፩፻: tērē, "raw," "genuine." **፩፻**: gērā, "left." **፩፻**: bāgō, "good."
፩፻: nētsū, "pure." **፩፻**: bādō, "empty." **፩፻**: zārē, "to-day."

In these two latter instances, the first syllable has the accent, because the long ā of the fourth order is the longest vowel:

፩፻፻ : gādām, "convent."	፩፻፻ : nēfāk'ē, "heresy."
፩፻፻ : fāk'ād, "will."	፩፻፻ : k'ēdūs, "holy."
፩፻፻ : mānōr, "the dwelling."	፩፻፻ : hodām, "voracious."
፩፻፻ : mālkām, "good," "beautiful."	፩፻፻ : zēm'dēnā, "affinity."

B. In Verbs, the radix without afformatives, as well as with light afformatives (*affirmativa levia*), has the accent on the antepenultima (on the third syllable from the end):

የበረ: năbără, "he was." **ተቀመጥ**: tăk'ă'măt'a, "he sat down."

ገልጽሁ: gă'lats'hū, "I have revealed."

See, however, more under the Verbs.

C. Feminine Adjectives and Substantives of the form **ንግድት**: have the accent on the last syllable; e.g. **ርግምት**: rĕgĕm't, "cursed."

D. Other Dissyllabic words with short vowels require the accent on penultima:

ልደት: lĕdăt, "birth." **ወምበር**: wă'mbär, "a seat," "chair."

ገንዘብ: gă'nzăb, "property." **ደንግኤል**: dĕngĕl, "virgin."

E. The heavier Suffixes (*suffixa gravia*) and Afformatives require the accent directly to precede them:

ቀምበር: "the yoke." **ቀምበርኩ**: k'ămbărātshĕn, "our yoke."

ሙለስ: "he brought back." **ሙለስኩ**: mălăsătshĕhū, "you brought back."

2. The *Interpunctuation* of the Abyssinians is very simple. A simple colon (:) serves to divide words from words; and a double colon (::) to separate sentences from sentences.

Note (a)—The colon, which is to prevent words running together, and thereby creating confusion, was formerly a perpendicular line (|), as is evident from inscriptions found at Axum; but that line has been divided into two points, as it was otherwise liable to have been mistaken for the numeral I (10).

(b) The double colon (::) is, in Abyssinian manuscripts, generally reserved for the end of paragraphs; when five red points are inserted into it in the form of a cross, in this manner, ☐☐☐☐☐

EXERCISE FOR READING.

(From "the Church History," p. 223.)

Băhăwär' yăt	ză'măń	băbêtă	Crës tî yän	ĕn dêhh yălătsh
በአዋጅት :	ከመ :	በበ :	ክርስቲያን :	እንዲህ : የለ :
In the Apostles'	time	in the Church		such
ă'n dë năt	nă'bărătshĕbăt,	hulătshău	ă'ndë	sĕgă
እንዲነት :	ነበረቻቸት :	ሁለተው :	እንዲ :	ሁን :
a union	was in her,	all of them	one	body
năfsem	es ki ho'nû	dë răs.	Crës tÿyă nătem	hû'lû ba Cres tòs
ነፍስም	እስተላሱ :	ዶረሰ ::	ክርስቲያንዎ :	ሁሉ :
soul and	that they were		the Christians and	all in Christ

kă'to ältă lă' yûm. hûlă'tshăū yă A'däm' lĕdjo'tsh ĕndă
՚՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚՚:
 never were separated. all of them of Adam children as
 nă'bärü bă sëgă, hûlătsh ā üm la râsă'tshăū
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 they were after the flesh, all of them and (as left) to themselves
 yâlă Crëst os yăt'ă'fû hât'e-'ân ēn dă nă'bärü en dêh üm
՚՚: ՚՚: ՚՚: ՚՚: ՚՚: ՚՚:
 without Christ lost sinners as they were, so also
 bâhă'imânot hûlă'tshăū bânde Crë st'os dânu.
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 by faith all of them through one Christ ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 hûlătsh äüm bân dë mats' rât tâts'ă'rû. bân dë dâ' mém
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 they all and by one calling were called. by one blood and
 ts'âdâk'ü bân dë mân'fâ sém nâts'ü tâk'ă'dâs'üm. Pêt'ros em
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 justified, by one Spirit and purified sanctified and. Peter also
 lă mî yâ mén hû lă ă lă: ē lân te yă mă'n gës têna
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 to believers all said: You of the kingdom (royalty) and
 yâk'ehnät wă'gän nâtshch'hû, yâtâmă'rât'ătshêm
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 of the priesthood a people, are, which is elected and
 yâtak'ă'dâs'atshem tē ū' lid, tê g'ält'ü zänd
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 and sanctified a generation, you should manifest that
 kâtsh'ă'lämâ wâdă mi yâs dänék'ăü wâdă bërhänü
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 from darkness unto marvellous unto his light
 yâts'ärä'tshch'hûn sérâ.
՚՚՚՚: ՚՚՚՚:
 of Him that hath called you the works.

IN ENGLISH CONSTRUCTION.

"In the time of the Apostles, there was such an union in the Church, that they (the Christians) were all one body and one soul. Christians were never (in no wise) separated in Christ. As all of them were Adam's children, after the flesh, and as in themselves and without Christ they

were lost sinners, so also (now) by faith they were saved through one Christ. They were all called with one calling; justified by one blood; and purified and sanctified by one Spirit. Peter also said to all believers: Ye are a royal and priestly people, a chosen and a sanctified generation, that ye should shew forth the works of Him that hath called you out of darkness unto His marvellous light."

CHAP. VII.

VARIOUS CHANGES OF LETTERS.

In order the better to comprehend the various euphonical changes occurring in the constitution of words in the different parts of speech, it is necessary to point out the rules by which the changes in the letters are regulated.

1. *Addition of Letters.*

Speaking, in the first instance, of the ADDITION of letters to words, we regard them as they are joined either at the beginning, or in the middle, or at the end,—prosthesis, epenthesis, and paragoge.

A. When a word commences with a liquid letter, esp. **z**: or **l**:, the **z**: is often preposed; e.g. **ዝፍርም**: for **ፍርም**: Närēā. The pre-formative, also, to the First Person Plural of Verbs, in the Present Tense Indicative and Subjunctive, has **እ****z****—**: for the Ethiopic **እ****—****::** **እንመለሰለ****z****::** “we return”; not **ንመለሰለ****z****::** **እለ****l****:** for **ለ****l****:** “head.” **እረጥ****l****፡፡** for **ረጥ****l****፡፡** “wet.”

B. In the middle and at the end after long vowels, **O****፡፡** is inserted or affixed; e.g. **ዓነዥ****፡፡** for **ዓነ****፡፡** “time.” **ስራዥ****፡፡** “and the work”; for **ስራ****ው****፡፡**

NOTE.—This euphonical **O****፡፡** must not be confounded with the suffixed pronoun **O****፡፡**, which only by the context can be distinguished from it.

2. *Contraction of Letters.*

CONTRACTION occurs most frequently to the vocal letters **አ****፡(ሀ)** **ዕ****፡(ወ)** and **ም****፡(ሙ)**, besides these to the gutturals **ሀ****፡(ሁ)** and **ኅ****፡(ኁ)**. They answer the አኩኩ letters of the Hebrew Language, in their becoming quiescent. This is especially the case—

A. In verbs and words derived from them, which, originating in the Ethiopic, on their transition into the Amharic have dropped the gutturals, as not compatible with the character of the latter language. In compensation

for this loss of the consonant, they have retained the vowel, and joined it to the preceding letter:

Amharic.	Ethiopic.
ማረ :	for ባዕስረ : "to pity," "have mercy."
ጽፈ :	.. ጥስፈ : "to write."
ተመረ :	.. ተመሆረ : "to learn."
ሙላ :	.. መልእ : "to be full," "to fill."
ገባ :	.. ነጋል : "to enter."
ሰራ :	.. ሰርሳ : "to work."
ወረ :	.. ወርሃ : "to order," "to constitute."
ከፈረ :	.. አፈረዋም : "to bring forth fruit."
ጽፈጥ :	ጽስፈጥ : "writing."

B. When a word beginning with እ: receives a preformative of the first, fourth, or sixth order, the እ—: consonant is dropped, and the vowel absorbed by the preceding letter. If እ—: stands in the first order, it changes the preceding short letter to one of the fourth order; if the fourth order precedes, no contraction takes place; if እ: is of the sixth order, it sometimes changes the preceding short into a long letter, sometimes it does not at all affect it:

እንገት :	"the neck."	የንገት :	"on the neck."
እርያ :	"a swine."	የርያ :	"to a swine."
እደረገው :	"he did it."	የደረገው :	"he who did it."
እገኘ :	"he found."	ተገኘለሁ :	"thou wilt find."

C. The same change, without loss of consonant, takes place with suffixes commencing with ā:

ስራቅሁ: "your work," from ስራ: and ā ቅሁ::

But when such suffixes are joined to letters ending in ū or o, these letters are changed into diphthongs:

ስጣቂቃ: from ስጣሁ: and āቃቃ: "I gave her."

When joined to letters of the fifth form, the suffix ā assumes the የ: as similar to the fifth vowel; and rendering that in the fourth form, deprives the preceding letter of its vowel:

ምስሳያቃቃ: from ምስሳለ: and āቃቃ: "our likeness."

በርያቃቃው: and በረያቃቃው: "their ox."

D. In those verbs which are called *geminant*, the two identical letters,

i.e. second and third radicals, are, in several moods and tenses, contracted into one letter, which letter then is sounded as a double letter:

ՓՂՂ: "it was light." **ՔՓՂՂ**: for **ՔՓՂՂՂ**: "it is light."

ՌՋՋ: "he sent." **ՔԾՌՋՋ**: for **ՔԾՌՋՋՋ**: "he that sends."

NOTE.—The same change takes place in all languages. Cf. in the English: *refer, referring; compel, compelled; man, manned; stir, stirring; stab, stabbed; &c.* In the Hebrew, letters so contracted receive a compensative Dagesh (cf. **סְבִּה**, **לְלִי**); in the Arabic, a Teshdid (**غَنَّبَ**, **دَبَّ**, **حَسَّ**). In the Abyssinian Languages they have no mark for this gemination; but in pronouncing the contracted syllable, the voice dwells on it for the same length of time as it would on the non-contracted two syllables.

E. The same change takes place in the conjugations of Verbs ending in **ի**: in the Second Person Plural, and in a few other instances; e.g.

ՄԻ: "We became," for **ՄՆԻ**:: **ՊԿՈՒ**: **ՊԿՈՒ**: &c.

3. Elision.

A complete Elision, i.e. ejection without compensation, takes place—

A. At the end of certain words, with letters of the sixth order, which are not, or scarcely, pronounced; e.g. **ՈՊՄ**: for **ՈՊՄԸ**: "wax." **ՈՎ**: for **ՈՎԸ**: "pencil." **ՃՅՋ**: "but," for the Eth. and Tig. **ՃՅՋՈ**::

B. With the **Բ**: Relative Pronoun, and the **Բ**: of the Genitive Case, when Prepositions are prefixed to or precede the word; e.g. **ՈՐԴԻՒ**: **ՈՎՅԱՄՍ**: **ՈԴ**: "In the house of thy brother, which I have seen"; instead of **ՈՐՐԴԻՒ**: **ՈՐՈՅԱՄՍ**: **ՈԴ**:: **ՃՅՋ**: **ԺՀԽՍ**: instead of **ՃՅՋ**: **ԲԺՀԽՍ**: "As thou art commanded."

C. With the Preformatives **Ճ**: and **Դ**: in Verbs and verbal derivations, beginning with **Ճ**: and **Դ**:: e.g.

ՃԵՎԱՄ: "I do"; **ՃՄԱԼՄ**: "I bind"; **ՃՈՅՎԱՄ**: "I order to write"; instead of **ՃԵՎԱՄ**: **ՃՄԱԼՄ**: and **ՃՈՅՎԱՄ**:: **ԴՎՈՂԱՄ**: "thou receivest"; **ԴՄՈՒՂԵՄ**: "you will be beaten"; instead of **ԴՎՈՂԱՄ**: and **ԴՄՈՒՂԵՄ**::

D. The Preformative **Դ**::, with the negative **Ճ**:, is often suppressed before **Դ**: **Դ**: **Թ**: **Ո**: **Է**: **Ջ**: **Ռ**: **Ո**: **Շ**: and **Շ**:: e.g.

ՃՔԳ: for **ՃԴՔԳ**: "Do not write."

ՃԹՈՓ: "Do not observe"; &c.

NOTE.—To this rule may be reckoned **Ք**:: before **Ո**: in one instance: **ՈՒ**: instead of **ՈՔՒ**: "sixty."

4. *Changes produced and suffered by the letter P: and its corresponding vowels I and Ē.*

Some of those changes have been noticed in the preceding. Here is to be added :

A. **P:** of the sixth order, as preformative to Verbs, resolves into the mere vowel *i*, when any letter of the same order is prefixed; e.g.

		instead of			instead of
ԱՌՇ:	ՃՌՇ::		ՈՄՊ:	ՊՃՄՊ::	
ՃՆՔՄՇ:	ՃՆՔՃՄՇ::		ՈՄԼՌ:	ՊՃՄԸԼՌ::	
ԻՐԿՑ:	ԻՔՔՐՑ::		ԲԸԳՓՄ:	ԲՊԿՓՄ::	
ՃՈՒՅԱԾՄ:	ՃՈՒԿՅԱԾՄ::		&c.		&c.

B. Under the same circumstances, **P:** not only remains, but, for the sake of assimilation, changes the preceding letter into one of the third order; e.g.

Ա.ՔՃՎՊ: **Ո.ՔՃՎՎ:** **ՃՆՔՔՓՄ:** &c.

C. The Vowel *I*, when applied, changes the following letters :

Ա:	into P::	Ո:	into Ռ::	Դ:	into Դ::
Խ:	into Կ::	Վ:	into Վ::	Կ:	into Կ::

		FOR		
պՃ:	"painter"	.	պՃ:	
նշՌ:	"regent"	.	նշՎ:	
ԹՄԼՌ:	"answer"	.	ԹՄԼՌ:	
ԴՄԵԺԼՌ:	"thou (f.) wilt be beaten,"	.	ԴՄԵՀԼՌ:	
ԴՔԵԺԼՌ:	"thou (f.) wilt be saved,"	.	ԴՔԵՀԼՌ:	
ՇՀԿ:	"prince"	.	ՇՀ:	
ՓԼՃ:	"parent"	.	ՓԼՃ:	
ՌՋՔ:	"giver"	.	ՌՋ:	
ՓԿՃՔ:	"piece"	.	ՓԿՃ:	or
ՍոՎՔ:	"rebel"	.	ՍոՎ:	ՓԿԱ.Ջ::

NOTE.—Under the same circumstances, **P:** changes those letters into the fourth order.

D. When words ending in *i* and *ē* receive any of the heavy suffixes (*gravia*), or the auxiliary **ԽԱ:** at the end, the third or fifth order is generally changed into the sixth, and **P:** follows :

ՈՀ: "ox." **ՈՀ.ՔՄՓ:** and **ՈՀ.ՔՄՎ:**

ԹՊՓ: "guardian," "protector." **ԹՊՓՔՔՆ:** "our protector."

՚ՌՈՌՓՔՂԱՌ: "thou (fem.) observest," for **՚ՌՈՌՓ: ՀԼՈՌ::**
Թ-ՈՓՔՂԱՄ: "I observe," for **Թ-ՈՓ: ՀԼՈՄ::**

E. When letters of the fifth order are shortened, they are changed into the third; when they are prolonged, they are changed into the fourth; and the original vowel *e* or *i* is represented by **Փ::**

՚ՆԵՐ: "he went." Imp. **՚ՆԵՐ:** go!

՚ՆԵՄ: "he sold."

՚ՎԵՐՄ: "he bought and sold," "carried on commerce."

5. *Changes produced and suffered by the Letter Օ: and its corresponding Vowels U and O.*

The letter **Օ:** is often contracted into the vowel *o*, and still further into *ü*.

A. **Օ:** is contracted into *o*. This occurs,

(a) With the second radical in verbs:

ՓՄՍ: for **ՓՈՄՍ::** **ԽՀՀ:** for **ԽՈՀՀ::** **ՃՄՍ:** for **ՃՈՄՍ::**

(b) In substantives:

ՈՎՈՒԺ: "gift," is contracted into **ՈՎՄԺ::**

ՔԴՈՒԺ: "power," into **ՔԴՄԺ::**

ԺԵՈՒԺ: "life," into **ԺԵՄԺ::**

ՃԱՅՈՒԺ: "prayer," into **ՃԱՅՄԺ::**

B. **Օ:** and *o* are further contracted into *ü*.

(a) In the subjunctive, imperative, and constructive in verbs:

ՃԳԾԱ: "let him stand." **ՃԳԱ:** "stand!" **ՃԳՄՓՃ:** "he is standing."

(b) With the suffixed pronoun 3d person sing. masc., which, to nouns ending in a letter belonging to the sixth order, is attached as *ü*; but after a long vowel, and in verbs as **ՕՒ:**, except after an *ü*, where it is changed for **՚Ւ:**

ՈՒՖ: "his house."

ՆՀՈՒ: "his master."

ՄՈՓՈՒ: "he observed it."

ՄՈՒՄՀ: "they beat him."

C. *o* and *ü*, when an *ā* is joined to them, change the gutturals and palatals into diphthongs of the fourth order, and put other letters into the sixth order, adding **Փ::**

ՌԱՐ: "his saying."

ՌԱՐՓՃՃ: "he is saying."

ՌՈՒՄ: "I gave."

ՌՈՒՄՓՅՈՒ: "I gave them."

ՌՅԱՌ: "senate."

ՌՅԱՌՓՅՈՒ: "their senate."

D. **Φ:** having been reduced to the vowel *o* in the radicals of verbs, is restored again when the first radical is amplified:

ጥΦዕሙ: "he stood against," "resisted," from **Φሙ:** "he stood."

6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs.

Diphthongs of the first order (**Φ:** **ቃ:** **ኋ:** **ኌ:**) are, when lengthened, changed into the fourth (**Φ:** **ቃ:** **ኋ:** **ጂ:**); when shortened, into the sixth (**Φ:** **ቃ:** **ኋ:** **ኊ:**) order:

ቃ-ጥረ: "he counted."

Lengthened

ጥቃ-ጥረ: "he made accounts." Shortened **ይቃ-ጥረ:** "let him count."

7. Reduplication of Letters.

Reduplication of letters takes place in the formation of nouns and verbs, generally with a design of giving intensity to the original meaning of the word, when the second or third radical is repeated:

ታፍስ: "small."

ታፋፋስ: "very small."

ታለዋ: "great."

ታለለዋ: "very great."

መለሰ: "he brought back."

ተመለለሰ: "he walked," i.e. "went and returned," "went up and down."

ተመለሰ: "he returned."

እደገ: "he did," "performed."

እደራሱ: "a great work."

8. Exchange of Letters.

The following letters are frequently changed one for another, as belonging to the same organ, or at least being similar in sound.

A. *Gutturals*.—**ሀ:** for **ሐ::** **ሐ:** for **ሀ::** and **ቁ::** **ሁ::** **ሐ:** and **ቁ::** for **ኋ::**
They write:

እረዳ: "he rested," for **በረዳ::**

አበባ: "Abyssinia," for **አበባ::**

እዘት: "he regretted," for **ከዘት::**

እፈረት: "he was ashamed," for **የፈረት::**

ሁን: "he became," for **ተኞ::**

አሁን: "he went," for **ተኞ::**

ቁለ: "behind," for **ቅለ::**

B. *Gutturals and Palatals*.—**ሀ::** and **ኋ::** for **ነ::** e.g.

ነድነት: in vulgar language, for **አድአሁ:** "I go."

ማኑስ: and **መኑስ:** for **መኑስ:** "the middle."

C. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ቁ:** interchanges occasionally with **ሙ::** **ሙ::** and **ኝ::** **እንቃቃት:** for **እንጂቃቃት:** "wood."

እስቀንቃቃጥላሁ: for **እስጂቃቃጥላሁ::** "I will harass them."
Ps. xviii. 38.

D. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ṭ**: and **ʈ**: and **ɖ**:: e.g.

አረም: "to be old," for **አረን:**

ተንጋጌ: for **ተንጋጌጌ**: “to rustle.”

E. *Linguals and Dentals*.— Λ : and ζ : W : and $\bar{\Lambda}$: T : and $\bar{\Gamma}$: (H : and H' :) H' : and $\bar{\chi}$: M : and $\bar{\chi}$: X : and Θ : e.g.

ՃՐԸ: “pound,” for **ԴՐԸ::** **ՎՄԸՀ:** “to please,” for **ՌՄԸՀ::**

ጥወሻለት: “perhaps,” for **ጥወሻለዎች**: ተብዙ: “to redeem,”

for $T\Omega^{\mathfrak{X}}$:

Φ-ζΩ: “to cut,” for **Φ-ζΣ**:: **χ-Π**: “quarrel,” for **Θ-Π**:

F. *Linguals and Labials*.—Where ξ: precedes Ω: ς: and ζ:, it is, as in the Greek and in other languages, exchanged for ου: a liquid of the same order.

አጥብልታ፡ “flute,” for አንብልታ፡፡

ՓՄԱԴԴ: “a sieve,” for **ՓՆԴԴ:**

ΛΑΜΠΙΝΗ: "a small tent," for the Greek **λαμπήνη**.

G. *Labials*.—**oo**: and **u**:: **oo**: and **ø**:: **u**: and **ø**::

ዘፍጋ: “rain,” for **ዘፍብ**:

ΦΩΤΟΣ: and **ΦΩΤΙΣ:** “chair,” for **ΦΩΤΙΣΙΣ:**

ተረ: “to remain,” (the **በ**: resolved into the vowel *o*) from the Eth. **በንደ**:

9. As for the liquids Δ : oo : I : Z : and the changes to which they are liable, they having been embodied in the preceding remarks, nothing further remains to be said concerning them.

10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters.

Takes place merely in low language.

መ-ለ-ት: “light,” “candle,” for **መ-ብ-ረ-ት** ::

ՓՇՈՎ: for **ՓՈՒՎ:** “nug-oil.”

ՃԱՆ: for **ՃՊԻԾ:** contracted from **ՃՊԻՃՈՒԾ:** "God."

ክርስቲ: “Christ.” **ክስტያን**: and **ካ-ስტያን**: for **ክልስტያን**: “Christian.”

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

~~~~~  
ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.  
~~~~~

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

In the Semitic Languages, it has been the custom (which also Ludolf has followed, in both his Grammars, of the Ethiopic and of the Amharic Languages) to class the different Parts of Speech under three heads; *viz.* Nouns, Verbs, and Particles; beginning the Etymological part of the Grammar with the Verb, as containing the roots of the whole language. But modern Grammarians have, for important reasons, adopted another course; following the practice of some ancient Arabic and Hebrew Scholars: and as that tripartition presents several inconveniences, especially to such as are unacquainted with the other Semitic Dialects, we divide the Amharic Language into Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections. None of the Abyssinian Languages possess the Article.

2. It will, in a great measure, facilitate the study of the language, before we enter on each part of speech in particular, to premise a few general observations on the original forms of words; because it is in them, and in the manner in which from them the various formations have proceeded, that the peculiarity of every language consists. We must observe, however, that the Amharic not being an original but a derived language (see Introduction, I. III.), we must have frequent recourse to the Ethiopic; and it presents several formations which, in the present state of its knowledge, cannot yet be accounted for.

3. Now the principal elements—as it were the skeleton—of words in any language, consists in the *Consonants*, which are animated by the different Vowels, according to the purposes of formation, flexion, and dialect: and in speaking therefore of original forms, we must look, not to the Vowels, but to the consonants.* This, when applied to the Amharic, where Vowels are constantly attached to Consonants, signifies that the various orders of a letter do not come into consideration, but the letter itself.

4. One characteristic feature of the Semitic Languages is the prevalence

* This is more clear in the Hebrew, Arabic, and Syriac; in which the Vowels are represented by certain marks above and below the line, which are more frequently omitted than written.

of triliteral forms, which are partly derived from original biliterals, and partly amplified to quadri- and pluri-literals; but, for the greater part, are original, and form the majority. This peculiarity applies also to the Abyssinian Languages; although not to the Amharic with equal force, as to its parent, the Ethiopic.

5. We do not intend to enter into any inquiry about the logical priority of the Parts of Speech; although we believe, that, in the natural development of the mind, the Noun has the precedence before the Verb; but in the grammatical formation of the Amharic Language, the Verb claims the priority, since all its roots are reducible to the first order, called Gēēz; i.e. "original." For the sake of convenience, however, we begin with the Noun, and follow the order stated under § 1.

CHAP. I.

ON THE NOUNS.

In speaking of the Nouns, we have to consider them according to their *Formation* (termination, species), *Gender*, *Number*, and *Declension*.

SECTION I.

Formation of Nouns.

1. As to the FORMATION of Nouns, they are either Simple, Augmented, or Compounds; either *Primitive* or *Derived*. Concerning their termination, they may end in any of the seven orders, except the first. We consider them, first, in respect to their *forms*, as simple, augmented, or compound; secondly, to their *formation*, as primitive or derivative.

2. *Simple forms*; consisting of two, three, or four letters.

A. *Biliterals.*

(a) Ending in the second order:

ኩፋ፡ bad. ብዴ፡ much. ቃል፡ full.

ንጽ፡ clean. በሩ፡ clear. ዲጂ፡ pure.

ሙዴ፡ covetous, a miser. ጥጥ፡ spices.

NOTE.—Most of these forms are Ethiopic Verbal Adjectives, originating from, or rather representing, the Passive Participle.

(b) Ending in the third order, generally signifying an agent:

ብራ፡ workman, diligent. መጋ፡ guide. ብራ፡ wide, spacious.

ዘሪ፡ sower, seedsman. ፈቃ፡ tanner. ዘእ፡ ebony.

ገበ፡ the inside. ጽበ፡ current in trade.

(c) Ending in the fourth order:

ՀՇ: a corpse.	ՊՎՐ: rent, wages.	ԻՒԾ: smell.
ՈՅ: emptiness.	ՈԿ: ransom.	ՈՎՅ: summer.
ԻՇ: equivalent.	ՓԿ: mockery.	ՓՎՅ: price.
ՂԱ: body.	ԲՄՊ: cloth.	ԱԼՄՊ: sole of the foot.
ԵՐՖ: betrothed.	ՈՎՅ: water.	ՃՎՅ: dumb.
ՃՊ: thief.	ՆՓ: vessel, utensil.	ԳՄՊ: dinner.
ՄՊՅ: evening.	ՄԵՐ: flesh.	ՀՎՅ: course.
ՈՇ: work.	ՔՃ: knife.	

(d) Ending in the fifth order:

ՈՒՆ: servant.	ԹՎԿ: the king's ma-	ՓՎՀ: poetry.
ՄՍԽ: a certain mea-	jesty.	ՈՎՀ: news.
sure.	ՈՒՅ: June.	ՄՎՀ: full-grown ele-
ՓՈ: butter, oil.	ՈՎՃ: ox.	phant.
ՃՎ: disease.	ԴՒՅ: time.	ՓՎՀ: garment.
ՊՎՀ: genuine, original.	ԳՎՃ: fruit.	

(e) Ending in the sixth order. These are the most numerous.

ՍՎ: silk.	ՓՅ: day.	ՓՅ: equity.
ԱԳՄ: cow.	ՄՎՅ: belly.	ՈՒՎ: pearl.
ՃՒ: measure.	ՈՒՈ: heart.	ԸՎԴ: law.
ՄՎՎ: warm.	ՃՎՅ: child.	ՄՎՀ: honey.
ՄՊՎ: coarse woollen	ՄՎԴ: banana.	ՎՎՀ: grass.
cloth.	ՊՎԴ: death.	ՈՒԳՎ: name.
ՀՎԿ: rice.	ՀՎՈ: hunger.	ՈՒԳՎ: governor.
ՈՎՈ: man.	ՈՎԴ: woman.	ՓՈՒ: priest.

(f) Ending in the seventh order:

ՄՊՃՎ: a fillip.	ՃՐ: a sort of bread.	ԸԴ: curds, cheese.
ՔԸ: hen.	ՎԼՌ: a third.	ԴՎՀ: a day's march.
ՎՎ: small thatched	ՔՎ: ear.	ԻՎԲ: cosso (a medi-
house.	ՓՎՈ: fried grain.	cine).

B. *Triliterals.*

(a) Ending in the second order are rare:

ՎՎՎ: meeting. **ՈԽԽ-ԽԽ:** harmonious.

(b) Ending in the third order, the second letter being generally of the

fourth order. The latter, if their first radical is of the first order, are to be considered as Active Substantives or Adjectives; if of the sixth, as Passive.

ԱՐՄՎ: groom.	ԱՓՄՎ: gatherer.	ԾԱՒՇ: merciful.
ԾՈՒՇ: counsellor.	ԾԱՐՈ: steward.	ՌԴՇ: drunkard.
ՈՀՇ: flying.	ՆՁՓ: mason.	ՆՇՇ: speaker.
ՀՄՓ: rapacious.	ԴՏՊՀ: scholar.	ՀՂՋ: passenger, passer-by.

To this class also belong those words whose third letter has been changed from the third to the sixth order. **ԾԱԼՈՒ:** "the returner," "restorer"; **ԳՄԱԼԻ:** "answer," "return"; **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:** "cutter"; **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:** "a cut," "piece," &c., for **ԾԱԼՈՒ:** **ԳՄԱԼԻ:** **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:** **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:::**

(c) Ending in the fourth order:

ԱԾՄՎ: entreaty.	ՃՈՒՖ: intellect.	ԾԱՒԱ: oath.
ԾՈՒՅ: twins.	ԾՈՒՅ.ԾՎ: bitter.	ԾՈՒՅ: affliction.
ԾՈՒՅ: sour, acid.	ԾՈՒՅ.ԾՎ: sleeping-place.	ԴՐՄՈՒ: the lungs.
ՈՒՅ.ԾՎ: place.	ՈՒՄՈՒ: potter's earth.	ՔՀՄՅ: remainder.
ՊՀՄ: slave.	ԴԱՐ: linseed.	ՆՓՄՈՒ: a spot.
ՀՈՅ: a chief.	ԻՒՅ.ԾՎ: height.	ՈԾԿԻ: sycamore-tree.

(d) Ending in the fifth order:

ԾԱՎ: substance, essence.	ԳՀՄՎ: perfection.	ԳՄՈՒԱ: similitude.
ԾՈՒՅ: trinity.	ՃՊՈ: intellect.	ՔՔՄՎ: Saturday.
ՈՒՅ.ԾՎ: blessing.	ՈՒՅ.ԾՎ: wheat.	ՈՀՄՈՒ: myrrh.
ՓՈՒՈ: young he-goat.	ԷՒԻՄ: August (month).	ԾԲՄՎ: age.
ՔՇՎ: cow's hide.	ԻՄՊՀ: song.	ԴՄՎ: question.
	Դ-ՄՎ: hippopotamus.	

Note.—It will be observed, that those Nouns, whose first radical is of the sixth, the second of the fourth, and the third of the fifth order, are generally Abstract Nouns of Quality.

(e) Ending in the sixth order:

α Nouns whose three letters are of the same order, generally denoting essence, quality, action, or concrete substances:

ՃՈՒՈ: cloth.	ՃՈՒԹ: change.	ԳՄԿՎ: fountain.
ԾՈՒՄ: prohibition.	ԳՄԸՎ: election.	ՈՒԱԽ: war.
ՄՆԱ: image.	ԾԻՐՈՒ: impure.	ՈՒԲԲ: coldness.
ՈՒՄՊ: ornament.	ՓՎԲ: cookery.	ՀԱՎ: corn.

ጥርፁ: remainder.

ክጥም: a heap.

ድርቃ: dryness.

ፈለጥም: addition.

ፋይ: judgment.

ንብረ: eagle.

ሰዕድ: a fold, time, turn.

ገዢ: tower.

አዋጅ: a pair.

አጥር: a pound.

ዘጋዣ: a fly.

ጥልቅ: depth.

የጊበያ: pregnancy,

fœtus.

β Nouns whose first letter is the first, and the second and third of the sixth order, generally denoting qualities, concrete substantives, or adjectives :

ለጥም: hide.

ረዳታ: long.

በትር: a stick.

እተር: lentils.

ቦጥም: pillar.

ገብስ: barley.

ለጥምና: leprosy.

የቅድ: horn.

ተከሳ: a plant.

ከብኑ: property.

ዘወጥም: coronet.

እጥሩ: hair.

ሙልት: form.

በረድ: cold.

ንጥር: leopard.

ወንድ: a male.

ደረቅ: dry land.

ራተል: thread.

γ Nouns whose first and third letters are of the sixth, and second of the second order. They are of Ethiopic formation, being generally Verbal Adjectives and Substantives, the same as § 2. A. a.

ሞወጥ: dead.

ቅዱስ: holy.

ንግሥ: king.

እነሳ: half, equal.

ሰጠጥ: proud.

ፍጠጥ: fourth.

በረድ: silver.

ንጂድ: pure.

ወጥናጥ: execrated.

ሰወጥ: blind.

ቅበጥ: anointed.

ተከተጥ: humble.

ንቅጥ: avaricious.

ርጊጥ: cursed.

ገዢጥም: majestic.

δ Nouns whose second letter is of the third order. They are of Ethiopic origin, and generally Adjective.

ሙራድ: bitter.

ቀል: light.

መበጥ: wise.

ሙክክ: sour.

ከበድ: heavy.

ሰበጥ: narrow.

ደቀቅ: thin.

ማዘጥ: mighty.

To the same class belong those Adjectives whose middle letter has been changed from the third into the sixth order :

ቀሬን: "thin"; **እቀር:** "short"; **ረዳታ:** "long"; instead of **ቀዱስ:** **እክር:** **ደዘም:**

Exceptions are :

ቆልጥ: "mould"; **ሞሚስ:** "shirt"; **ዘበጥ:** "prophet"; **ዘበጥ:** "grape"; &c.

ε Nouns whose middle letter is of the fourth order. They are generally Substantives, though sometimes Adjectives.

ՃՊԵՐ: custom.

ԺՄԵՐՄ: disease.

ՄԱԼՈՒ: tongue.

ՃՂՈ: halter.

ԺԻՒԻ: itch.

ՄԱՒՅ: barren.

ՃՎԴՈ: reins, bridle.

ԺՑՈՒ: infant.

ζ Nouns whose middle letter is of the fifth order: **ՌԱՅ:** **ԺՄՈՒ:** **ՄԱՀԴ:**

η Nouns whose middle letter is of the seventh order: **ՀՊՈՒ:**

θ Nouns Verbal, ending in the feminine —Ւ:: They will be mentioned hereafter, when speaking of Derived Nouns.

(f) Nouns ending in the seventh order. They are all Substantives.

ՃՎՈՒ: lamentation.

ՄՈՒՐՈ: a pole.

ՓՈԾ: jackal.

ՈՓՈՒ: mule.

ՈՒՆԵ: awl.

ՔԸՆ: a dērgo.

ԳՄԾԻ: exile.

ՄՈՒՐ: a canal.

ՓՆՇ: girl, virgin.

ՆԿՐԻ: leaven.

ՈՎՈՒՐ: tempest.

ՎՄՈՐ: water-jar.

ԳՄՅԻ: ague.

ՌԽՈՐ: wire.

ՈՀՋ: hail.

ԻՈԾ: drum.

ԱՇԽ: poisonous serpent.

ԴԸԸ: throat.

C. Quadrilaterals :

There are none ending in the second order.

(a) Single Nouns ending in the third order. Such as are derived from any derivation of Verbs are not included here.

ՈՒՈՒՈ: gatherer. **ՈՆ ԹՓ:** a cleaver.

ՈՆՄՓ: a split. **ՈԸՊՀ:** a plunderer.

(b) Ending in the fourth order:

ՄՍՅՈՒՐ: jaw.

ՈՒՅՐՈՒ: deceit.

ՃՈՒԾ: a learned man.

ՎՃՐԱ: beam, car-

riage.

ՀՈՅՅ: a whip.

ԴՎՄՊՈՒ: a young man.

ԻՄՄ-ՈՀ: a kind of pulse.

Ո-ՈՒՐ-ՈՒ: grass-hopper.

ՀՓՄԵՐ: leather bag.

(c) Ending in the fifth order:

ՃՄԱԼՈՎ: verdure. **ՄՊՅՈՒՇ:** a rabbit.

ԻՄՊՊՈՒ: an elder. **ՈԸՈՒ:** Cayenne pep-

ՃՈՒԾՈՒ: bill of account.

ԸԿՀ-Ւ: clemency.

ԴՎՀՄՊ: translation.

per.

(d) Ending in the sixth order:

ԱՄԱԼՄՈ: green. **ՄՎՅԱՅ:** village.

ԳՄՅԻՒԾ: adultery. **ՎԱԽՈՒ:** chain.

ՄՈՒՐՈՒ: poor.

ՀՎՀԵՐ: mud.

ՈՅԻԿ: a span.	ՈՅԱՎ: sponge.	ՓՄՈԾ: yoke.
ԳՅԱՌ: eye-brow.	ԴՅԻՒՃ: shrewdness.	ՀՈՒԻԿ: a youth.
ՀՈՎՈՒ: side.	ԲՐԱԿՆ: frontier.	ԲՐԵՋ: virgin.
(e) Ending in the seventh order :		
ՍՈՒՅՓ: a harp.	ՓԸՓԸԾ: pewter.	ՀՊՈՃԻ: religion, god-
ՓՅԻՒԾ: prince, or	ԽՅԱՔԸԾ: monkey.	liness.
princess.		
		ՎՅՖԸԾ: stupid.

D. There are not many Simple Nouns of five and more letters: some of those which exist, we will mention here:

ԿՀՅԱՋ: green.	ԺՄԾԼՄՊ: vegetables.
ԴՅԻՇՈՒ: supporter of the head.	ՀՈԾԵՐ: flame.
ՀՅՓՈՂԸ: egg.	ՀՅՓԾԵՒ: sleep.
ՀՈՓՃՃՈՒ: rhinoceros.	ՔՅՈՒՊԸ: chamber-maid.
ԽՅԴԿՐԿ: chequered.	

3. In speaking of *Augmented Nouns*, we do not refer to those casual additions they receive by inseparable Prepositions at the beginning, or Pronouns at the end; but we speak of those augmentations at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, by which their original signification is modified. In order, however, not to fall into an unnecessary repetition, we postpone this subject till we come to speak of *Derived Nouns*. (See 5.c.)

4. Compounds are formed (*a*) from the Ethiopic *status constructus*; the *nomen regens* and the *nomen rectum* being combined into one word, as in our "house-door" for "house's door," only the reverse of our order. In the Ethiopic, as in the Hebrew, the word (nominative) which precedes, and which, according to our ideas, should have the nominative form, is changed; and the word (genitive) which follows, and which we should expect to be changed, is not changed at all. As this peculiarity does not affect the Amharic Language any further, we do not enter into it, but content ourselves with giving only a few instances.

Thus are many Ethiopic words compounded, especially their Christian names; e.g. ዳላ: ማርያም: Haila Maryam, "the Power of Mary," commonly Hailu; ገብረ: እግዥልብር: or ገብረ: እምነት: Gabra

Egziabehér, or Gabra Amlák, contr. Gabramlák, commonly Gabru, or Zaégbihér, or Zäamlák, "Servant of God," &c.

(b) From Amharic words, combining either noun with noun, or the noun with any other part of speech:

Compounds.

፩፻፻: left-hand.

፩፻፻: free-will, liberty.

፩፻፻: empty-handed.

እ፻፻: O my Lord!

Analysis.

፩፻፻: and እ፻፻::

፩፻፻: (dominion?) & እ፻፻: hand.

፩፻፻: empty, & እ፻፻::

የ፻፻: mine, & የ፻፻: Lord, master.

5. *Primitive Nouns*, strictly speaking, are those whose origin cannot be traced to any other source but to themselves. Now there are a good number in the Amharic Language which are easily recognised as Primitive in this sense; but there are many others which can be called so only in a relative acceptation of the word, because in the Ethiopic, from whence they are taken, they are not Primitive; although either the original word is not current in the Amharic, or the mode of its derivation is not accordant with the idiom of that language. The first of these two latter clauses induces us to consider a number of Amharic Nouns as comparatively Primitive; whilst the second constrains us to leave to others the same derivative character which they have in the Ethiopic.

As the Primitive Nouns are found only among the *simple* forms, we refer to the above exhibition, No. 2.

A. *Biliterals*:

Class (a) is entirely derivative.

Class (b) also.

Class (c) contains a number of Primitives; e.g. ገብ: በቃ: በኅ: በጋ: ክብ: ቅጋ: ገለ: ተመጥ: ፈመጥ: ወጋ: ተጋ: መጥ: ድጥ: ለበ: ቅራ::

(d) *Primitives of the fourth class*: ለውል: ተቃ: መስል: ተኋ: ገዘ: መል: ቅረ::

(e) In the fifth class, the majority are Primitives.

(f) In the sixth class, መሂል: ዝር: ዝር: ክጥ: ይጥ::

B. *Trilateral Primitives*:

In class (c), መንገት: ተምጣ: ተህሳ: ተርም: ተሰባ: መግኘት: ክዋጥ: ወርካ:

In class (d), ተንድ: ክከሰ: መምለ: ዝንድ: ክርበ: ወመመ: ልድመ: ጉማራ:

In class (e), almost the whole of the first (α); about half of the second (β);

CRALS.

ԾՀՀ: filix mas.
ՄՌԱՋ: stairs, ladder.
ՍՈՂԻ: God.
ԽԿԳՈ: sort of gourds.
ՆԻԼ: nail.
ՃՎՃ: k'welqu'āl.
ԻՊԸ: bedstead.
ՈՓՃ: yolk of an egg.
ՉԻՇ: capricorn.
ԱՇՅ: small elephants' tusk.
ԾՅԹ: unfermented wine.
ՏՐՃԴ: obelisk.
ԻՇՀԸ: adultery.
ՎՐՈԸ: inquiry.
ԽՍԳՈ: yellow pigeon.
ՑՈՒՃ: shrewdness, craftiness.
ՅՎԻՇ: moth.
ԵԽԸ: span.
ԸՐՈՒ: back-door.
ԴԻՐՅ: acrimonious fruit.
~~~~~  
5. ult. ՄՌ::  
**ԸԻԸ:** a certain quadruped.  
**ՎՇՈՐ:** flat basket.  
**ԶԿԻ:** sort of beads.  
**ԽՄՈՒ:** tobacco.  
**ՀՅՅ:** raw flesh.  
**ՈՒՅՓ:** harp, lyre.  
**ԾՎԳՈՅ:** an anthelmintic.  
**ԸՖՈՓ:** glass.  
**ՈՓՓ:** kind of marmots.  
**ԸՓԸ:** pewter.

## PLURILITERALS.

1. ult. Վ::  
**ՀԾՊՃԴ:** a parasitic plant.  
**ԴՅՓՓՃ:** kind of lizards.  
**ԵԾՊՈՒՔ:** breast-bone.  
**ՄԱԾԱԾՈՒ:** weasel.  
~~~~~  
2. ult. Վ::
ՍՀՅՈՒՂ: green.
ԴՀԾՊՃՃ: a certain bird.
~~~~~  
3. ult. Ս::  
**ՀԳՄԳԻՃՈ:** saddle's crupper.  
**ՀՆԻԽՈՒ:** measles.  
**ՓՎՅՄՃԴ:** a small handful.  
**ՓՎԾՊԾԵՄՊՃ:** ankle-bone.  
**ՀՆՅԾԾՊՍՊՃ:** lap-wing.  
**ՄՃՈՎՃ:** glutton.  
**ՀՈԾՈՎՃ:** flame.  
**ՀԳՄՈՒՁ:** white horse.  
**ՀՆՓՎՃ:** egg.  
**ՀՆԻԽԾԾ:** a weed.  
**ՄԾՅԽՈՒՆ:** chin.  
**ՄՎՓԼԳՄՃ:** large knife.  
**ՈՅՄԾԾ:** game of chess.  
**ՀՆՓՃԳ:** sleep.  
**ԸՒՈՒԽՈՒ:** light-minded.  
**ՄԾՅԻՇ-ՀԻՇ:** carriage.  
**ՓՎՅՄՎՎԾ:** curled hair.  
**ՀԳՄՈՒՁ-ՄԵՄՊ:** martingal.  
~~~~~  
4. ult. ՄՌ::
Հ-ՈԾՊՊՎՈ: sort of plaited hair.
ՀՅՊ-ՈԾԸ: sort of bread.

none of the third (γ); few of the fourth (δ), **ΦΛ·Π:** **ታደሳ:** **Φማሳ:** **እድሳ:** **ነበራ:** **ዘበራ:** **ዘበራ·የ:**, and fifth (ϵ), **ልግ·Π:** **ልጋም::**; but none of the sixth (ζ) division.

In class (f), the greater part are Primitives.

C. *Quadrilateral Primitives*:

(a) None.

(b) **ሙንጂ:** **ወረሳ:** **ስም·ብር::** **እለንጂ:** **ነ·ብከ·ባ:** **ድብተሳ::** **እቀማሚያ::**

(c) Few; e.g. **ሙንጥል:** **በረበራ::**

(d) The majority.

(e) **ሙስንቃ:** **Φርቅር:** **ወይኬር:** **ዘንፈር:** **ድንቅር::**

D. Those mentioned as simple *plurilaterals* are all Primitive.

6. *Derived Forms* take their origin either from Nouns, Verbs, or Particles; and are formed in various ways, either by *contraction* (elision), or by *change*, or by *augmentation* of their letters.

A. By *Contraction* (see Part I. Ch. VII. 2.), and *Elision* (ibid. 3.), they are changed more seldom within the limits of the Amharic than in their transition from the Ethiopic Language into the Amharic. It takes place most frequently in Bilaterals:

Amh.	Eth.	Amh.	Eth.
ንጽ: pure,	from ንጽ·ሐ::	ጥም: dinner,	from ጥም·ሐ::
በረ: ox,	.. በሰራ: ..	ለም: cow,	.. ለሆም: ..
ሙር: honey,	.. ሙኑር::	ዣር: grass,	.. ዣኑር: ..
ቅብ: butter, oil,	.. ቅብና::		sometimes Amharic.

Sometimes in Trilaterals, derived from the Ethiopic Quadrilaterals:

Amh.	Eth.	Amh.	Eth.
በርተ: strong,	from በርተዴ::	ስመ·ሙ·: harmonious,	
ገሐድ: essence,	.. ገሐድድ::		from ስመ·ሸመ·ዕ::

B. By *change* of one, two, or of all the primitive letters, according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 4, 5, 7. A few instances will suffice for illustration:

Derivative.	Primitive.
ቅድም: that which is before,	
ቅድማ: saddle's pommel,	} from ቅድ·ም: the former time.
ቅድማ: Saturday,	
ቅድስ: holy,	
ቅድስ: consecration,	} from ቅድስ: to sanctify.
ቅድስ: sanctifier,	

Derivative.

መለስ: a restorer,
መለስ: return, answer,
መኅል: likeness,
መኅድ: kind, resemblance,
ንገሥ: king,
ንገስ: regent,
እያዝ: hunter,
እያዝ: game,

Primitive.

} from **መለስ:** to return, bring back.
} from **መስል:** to resemble.
} from **ንገዥ:** to be king.
} from **እያዝ:** to hunt.

C. Augmentation of letters in the derivation of Nouns takes place either in the beginning (preformation), or in the middle (reduplication), or at the end (afformation).* The letters used for this purpose are **ሙ:** **ጥ:** **ኋ:** **ቻ:** **ወ:** **ያ:** Of these, **ሙ:** **ጥ:** **ኋ:** **ቻ:** **ወ:** and **ኋጥጥ:** are prefixed; and **ሙ:** **ጥ:** **ኋ:** **ቻ:** **ወ:** and **ያ:** are affixed. Reduplication takes place by repeating any of the radical letters.

(a) Preformation :

ሙ: is used for Infinitives, and retained in Nouns derived therefrom:

ሙበዕቅ: the watching.

ሙበዕቅዋ: watch-house, from **በዕቅ:** to watch.

ጥ: **ጥና:** **ኋ:** **ኋጥጥ:** and **ኋጥጥ:** are retained in Nouns derived from those derivations of Verbs which have these characteristic Preformatives:

Noun.	Verbal derivation.	Radix.
ተፍጋሪ: speaker.	ተፍጋረ: to speak.	ኋረ: to say, tell.
ተንቀጥቀሱ: trembler.	ተንቀጥቀዣ: to tremble.	ቀጥቀዣ: to bruise.
እራራሪ: breaker.	እራራብ: to break.	ራብ: to burst.
ኋነታሙዋ: nurse for sick persons.	ኋነታሙሙ: to nurse sick persons.	ኋሙሙ::
ኋንግተዋ: cheater.	ኋንግተተ: to cheat.	ኋተተ: (non occ.)

ኋ: is prefixed to Verbs, and one of the radical letters doubled; e.g.,

አገባብ: **አቆጣሙዋ:** **እያረራብ::**

ጥ: and **ጥ:** are prefixed to Verbs to form Nouns of action; e.g.

ጥሬምት: **ጥምክርጥ::**

Sometimes the **ኋ:** or **ጥ:** is cut off, and **ኋ:** retained in these Preformatives:

* This is analogous to the Hebrew **הַנִּזְמָנִין** and the Arabic **الْمُسَمَّى** Nouns.

Noun.	Verbal Derivation.	Radix.			
ՀԴՐԱՋ:	thunder.	ՀԴՐԵԴԻՋ:	to thunder.	ՀԴՐԵՋ:	Eth. to beat.
ՆԹՈԹՈ:	a drop.	ԴՅՈԹՈԹՈ:	to drop.	ԹՈԹՈ:	to trot.

Փ: occasionally interchanges with the Մ: of the Infinitive, the Noun being considered no longer as an Infinitive: e.g.

ՓՄՈԾ: (or ՓՅՈԾ:) chair. ՄՅՅՈԾ: the sitting, (Eth.)
 ԻՌԵ: to sit.

ՓՄՃԴ: (for ՄՅՅՃԴ:) or ՓՆՃԴ: "sieve"; from ՆՃ: to blow, to fan, to make wind.

(b) *Reduplication*; repetition of any of the radical letters:

Derivative.	Primitive.
ԴՖՖՈՒ:	very small.
ԴՂՂՓ:	very great.
ՄԸԼԻՒԹՄ:	very beautiful.

In Verbal Nouns, which take it from the Verb, Reduplication is retained:

Nouns.	Verbal Derivation.	Radix.			
ԴՄՈՂՂՈՒ:	walker.	ԴՄՈՂՈՒ:	to walk.	ՄՈՂՈՒ:	to return.

Reduplication with transposition:

ԴՀԿՈՒ: doubt. ԴՄԵՄՈՒ: to doubt. ՄՀԿՈՒ::

(c) *Afformation* of the letters Մ: Դ: Կ: Բ: Վ: and Պ::

α The Afformation of ԿՊՈ: to Substantives, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Fulness, Intenseness, &c., similar to the Latin *osus*, and English *ous* and *ful*; e.g.

Form in առ.	Origin.
ՄԸԼԻՒԹՄ:	beautiful (formosus).
ՄՔԳՄ:	glutton (man of a large stomach).
ԳԸՐՊՄ:	fertile.
ՈԳԵՐՊՄ:	thick.

β Afformative Մ: forms Substantives:

ՀՁՄԸ:	mouse-coloured mule.	ՀՁՄ:	mouse.
ՈՒՄԸ:	fornicator.	ՈՒՄ:	dog.

γ The Afformative Դ: ատ, ետ, իտ, ալ, լա, produces feminine forms:

Form in Դ::	Origin.
ՃՐԴԴ:	to bring forth.
ԴՄՈՎՀԴ:	doctrine.
ՑՃԱՒԴ:	(fem.) pure.
ՃՐԴԴ:	daughter.
ԳԸՐՎԴ:	fear.
ՓՀԵԴ:	remainder.
ՀՎԴԴ:	lowness.
ԴՄԵԴ:	to learn.
ՑՃԱՒԴ:	(masc.) pure.
ՃՐԴԴ:	son.
ՃՄԵԴ:	(Eth. ՃԸՐՎԴ:) to be afraid.
ՓՀԵԴ:	to remain, to be left.
ՀՎԴԴ:	low.

δ The Afformative **፩**: **አን**: forms Substantives of Quality, from Verbs which in Latin frequently answer those ending in *tas*, in English in *ty*:

Forms in **አን**.

ወልጭ: authority.

ወለዥ & **ወለወን**: to have authority.

ብርሃን: light, clarity.

ብረ: Eth. **ብር**: to be light or clear.

ከጥና: covenant.

ከጥና: **ተከጥና**:

ቅልጭ: delicacy, vanity.

ቅልዥ: to melt.

ዋጋግን: offering, eucharist.

ዋጋግን: to take the sacrament.

Exceptions are, **ገንዘሩን**: "ant"; and **ገጥምናን**: "cough."

ε **ቁ**: and **ነት**: are affixed to Adjectives, Substantives, and Particles, in order to form Abstract Substantives; generally answering our *ence*, *ance*, *ness*, *cy*, *ty*, *hood*, and *ship*.

Forms in **ቁ**: and **ነት**:

ልበቁ: intelligence, sagacity.

Radices.

ልብ: heart, mind.

ልሁልቁ: highness.

ልሁል: (Eth.) high.

ልደንት: difference, variety.

ልደ: different, various.

ልቻነት: childhood, sonship.

ልቻ: child, son.

ልባንነት: infancy.

ልባን: infant.

መልካምነት: beauty, goodness.

መልካም: beautiful, good.

መምህርነት: teachership.

መምህር: teacher.

ቅድስት: holiness.

ቅድ: holy.

እውነትነት: veracity.

እውነት: true.

እስማተትነት: witchcraft.

እስማተት: sorcerer.

ζ The Afformative **ቍ**: is affixed to Nouns, to form Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, or Quality.

Forms in **ቍ**:

ሁነታቍ: lazy, an idler.

Radices.

ሁነት: idleness.

ሙያዝቍ: sailor.

ሙያዝ: ship.

They often assume a **ተ**: before the **ቍ**:

ብረተቍ: labourer.

ብረ: work, labour.

እምበተቍ: refractory.

እምበ: I will not.

η The Ethiopic Afformative **አዊ**: is affixed to Nouns Substantive with the same effect as those formed by the Afformative **ቍ**:: They, besides, form Gentile Nouns.

Form in **አዊ**:

ወንድአዊ: evangelist.

Radix.

ወንድ: gospel.

θ The letter **ያ**: is affixed,

ἢ To *Infinitives*, to form Nouns of Agency, Instrumentality, Locality, Object, &c.; whereby it must be observed, that when the letter to which it is

AUGMENTED FORMS.

4. *By Afformatives.*
 to Substantives and Adjectives, denoting fulness.
ጥቃ: beautiful.
ጥወ: fruitful.
ጥ: gluttonous.
 ~~~~~  
 : to Simple Roots, forming Substantives.  
**ጥ**: a certain fever.  
**ጥ**: stallion.  
**ጥ**: fornicator.  
**ጥቃ**: ash-coloured (*lit.* mouse-coloured) mule.  
 ~~~~~  
ጥ, እጥ, ዝጥ, ባጥ: and **ጥ**: *Feminine Forms.*
 : birth, nativity.
 : (**ጥልወጥ**): power.
ብስጥ: boasting, glorying.
 : (**ልጻጥ**): daughter.
ጥ: majesty.
ጥ: fear.
ጥ: fornication.
 : the rest, remainder.
ጥ: lowness.
ጥ: gift.
 ~~~~~  
 to Simple Roots, forms Substantives of Essence (*Concrete* Substantives), Power, Quality.  
**ጥን**: authority, privilege.  
**ጥ**: light, clarity.  
 : covenant, treaty.  
 : infant.  
**ጥ**: delicacy.  
**ጥ**: offering, eucharist.  
**ጥ**: ant.  
**ጥ**: coughing, a cold.

(e) **ጥ**: and **ጥ**: to Substantives, Adjectives, and Particles, form Abstract Substantives of Quality, State, &c.  
**ልበጥ**: intelligence, prudence.  
**ልሰልጥ**: highness, elevation.  
**ክምናጥ**: relationship.  
**ልድንጥ**: difference, variety.  
**ልድንጥ**: sonship.  
**መልካምናጥ**: goodness, beauty.  
**እውነትናጥ**: verity.  
**እምነትናጥ**: divine nature.  
 ~~~~~  
 f. **ጥ**: to Nouns and Particles, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, and Quality.
ሁነጥ: idler.
መርከበጥ: navigator, sailor.
 Often assumes **ጥ**:
እዘንጥ: mournful.
ስራጥ: workman, labourer.
እምባጥ: unwilling.
 ~~~~~  
 (g) *āwi, with the same effect as the preceding.*  
**ወንፈላዊ**: evangelist.  
**ፈሪዊ**: Pharisee.  
**ፍረንወ**: French.  
 ~~~~~  
 (h) **ጥ**: expressed or implied, forms Nouns of Instrumentality, Agency, Locality, Object, Individuality.
 ~~~~~  
 α *To Infinitives.*  
**ሙዋርጥ**: a tie.  
**ሙለነጥ**: measuring instrument.  
**ሙለገጥ**: object of scorn.  
 ~~~~~  
 β *To Simple Roots.*
ቅምጥ: spoil, booty.
ቅምሳጥ: bit, morsel, taste.
ጽርጌጥ: rubbish, sweepings.

to be joined, is one of those changeable Linguals or Dentals mentioned in Part I. Ch. VII. 4 c., both **፻**: and the letter to which it was to be joined, are dropped, and exchanged for such a cognate Lingual or Dental as combines the joint sounds. (See the above-mentioned paragraph.)

Forms with **፻**: the **፻** being either expressed
or implied.

መለከታዊ: measure.

መለገታዊ: object, means of scorn.

መለኅታዊ: passage, excellent.

መንተዋዴያዊ: printing-office.

መመስላክት: place, or means of
returning.

ማዋጋዊ: a tie, band, bond.

Infinitives.

መለከት: the measuring.

መለገታ: the scorning.

መለኅታ: the passing.

መንተዋዴ: the printing.

መመስላክ: the returning.

ማዋጋ: the binding.

ב To Simple Roots, with the same object and in the same manner as to Infinitives:

Forms with **፻**:

ቆምጥ: booty.

ቆምጥት: a bit, taste.

ጥጥጥ: trail, train.

ጽርጥ: rubbish.

Roots.

ቆም: to plunder.

ቆምጥ: the tasting.

ጥጥጥ: the dragging.

ጽርጥ: sweeping.

SECTION II.

On the Species of Nouns.

1. Nouns are to be considered, either as *Substantives*, names of things, or as *Adjectives*, names of properties. In the Amharic, as in the other Semitic Languages, they both belong together; and they have been jointly treated in the preceding Section as to their Formation. It remains now to say a few words concerning the Adjectives.

2. As to their Formation, but few of them, as the preceding Tables show, are *original*: such are,

ነት: good.

ኝበ: well.

አመለ: bad.

መለለ: oblong.

ደረሰ: prominent.

አረጋ: old.

Even these are but primarily Adjectives; and when isolated, may be, and are, used as Substantives. Most Adjectives are of derivative forms, being derived either from Verbs (see Table II.) or from Substantives; e.g.

ነገም: **አዋቅ**: **መረጃ**: **መለከቶ**: **መንተዋዴ**: **አሳዋ**::

Participial Adjectives, **የመጥገኘ**: **የጥመዝ**::

3. As for Comparison, the Amharic Language, like the Hebrew, has no

Adjective form to express the Comparative or Superlative: we therefore must defer this subject to the Syntax.

4. The Numeral Nouns will be treated in a separate chapter.

We now proceed to the consideration of the *Gender* of the Nouns.

SECTION III.

On the Gender of the Nouns.

1. The Amharic Nouns have but two *Genders*, Masculine and Feminine. We shall endeavour to point out a few general rules, showing what Nouns belong to either of the two genders, and by which forms they are to be recognised. We have to complain, however, that there is yet much confusion; both masculine and feminine forms being alternately applied to words where the sex is not palpably distinguished.

A. Masculine are:

(a) The names of God, angels, and men; also the names of nations, and of all male animals:

አገልግሎት	: God,	ስምዕዝ	: Satan.	ያረብ	: an Arab.
the Lord.		ገብርኤል	: Gabriel.	ሀበሻ	: an Abyssinian.
እምነት	: God.	ሰው	: man.	ፋይንስ	: a Frenchman.
የየሁ	: Jesus.	የሐንስ	: John.	እንበሳ	: a lion.
መልካም	: angel.				

(b) The names of the sun and the stars, of ranks and offices of men:

የአዲ	: sun.	ጥቶ	: governor.	ማተወቂ	: guardian.
ዘዴ	: star.	ጥዣ	: ruler.	ጠላ	: servant.

B. Feminine are:

The names of women and female animals; the names of the moon, the earth, countries, towns, &c.; plants; the names of female ranks and offices; collective names; and the names of several abstracts:

ማሪያም	: Mary.	ክተማ	: city, camp.	ወጪ	: princess, lady.
ድር	: hen.	መንደር	: village.	እመቤት	: mistress.
ሙሉ	: moon.	ትንደር	: Gondar.	ንረም	: female servant.
ጥም	: earth, country.	ከፍ	: tree.	ገባ	: assembly, society.
አበባ	: Abyssinia.	እበባ	: a flower.		

And see 2.

C. Common, are several conditions of life; as, "child," "slave," and others, where the termination of the word does not distinguish the sex.

2. The two Genders are distinguished,

(a) By the addition of distinct words denoting the Male and the Female. These are: ወንድ: and ተጥት: for Males, and ብቻ: and አጭስት: for Females: besides this, አዎሬ: for several male animals, who are without this distinction considered as females; as, goats, fowl, &c.: e.g.

ወንድ: ልማ: a son, boy. **ብቻ:** ልማ: a daughter, girl.
የንሰሳት: ተጥት: male of animals. **የንሰሳት:** አጭስት: female of animals.
አዎሬ: ፍርድ: he-goat. **አዎሬ:** ዝር: cock (he-fowl).

In Shoa, they carry this distinction further; calling "clayish earth" ወንድ: or ተጥት: ወጪር: (male earth), and "loose earth" አጭስት: or ብቻ: ወጪር: (female earth). They call wood which splits perpendicularly, ወንድ: እንዲሸጥ: "male wood"; and wood which splits transversely, ብቻ: እንዲሸጥ: "female wood." Maria-Theresa dollars, which have the requisite coinage, አጭስት: በር: "female dollars"; and those which are any way deficient, being M. T. dollars, ተጥት: በር: "male dollars." The latter distinction obtains in all Abyssinia.

(b) The Female is distinguished by the termination ተ: ባ: and ተ:: (See the Table of Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(c) The same by ተ: and ተ:: (See Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(d) The Primitives are mostly *Masculines*.

(e) As to the Derivative forms, the following rule obtains:

Classes I. 1. 2. 3. 6. and II. 4. f. g. are predominantly Masculine; and Classes I. 4. and II. 4. c. d. e. predominantly Feminine. The rest are of Mixed Gender.

3. The remaining Nouns are undetermined as to the sex; the Adjective and Verb being promiscuously applied to them in the Masculine and in the Feminine Gender.

4. Several Adjectives and Substantives, whose form is Masculine, are changed into a Feminine form:

Masculine.	Feminine.
ንግ:	ንግስት: pure.
ባሩ:	ባሩሁት: clear.
ገኘም:	ገኘምጥ: wonderful.
ጠዋ:	ጠዋቱ: guardian.
እርሱ:	እርሱት: old.
ወራሽ: heir.	ወራሻቸ: heiress.
ሁነተኛ:	ሁነተኛወያ: lazy.
አረመዋ:	አረመዋጥ: heathen woman.

SECTION IV.

On the Number of the Nouns.

1. The *number* is but twofold; viz. *Singular* and *Plural*. We might add the *Collective*; but that being considered either as a body, when it is *Singular*, or as an aggregate of individuals, when it is *plural*, it constitutes no particular form; and we therefore proceed to consider these two, the *Singular* and the *Plural*; there being no *Dual* in this language.

2. As the *Singular* is that form in which each *Noun*, before it is changed, presents itself, we need not say any thing about it, but direct our attention at once to the formation of the *Plural* Number.

3. The truly Amharic *Plural* is very simple; it has but one form, and that is the termination *otsh* (Tigrê *ot*); in which we recognise the Hebrew *תָּוֹת*, the Arabic *ات*, and the Ethiopic *at*; e.g.

Singular.	Plural.
በት: house.	በተቻዎች: houses.
ወጥ: dog.	ወተኞች: dogs.
ልጾ: child.	ልጾች: children.
አባት: father.	አባተቻዎች: fathers.
ጠዋቅ: guardian.	ጠዋቅዎች: guardians.
በት: good.	በተቻዎች: good.

Note.—The *Plural* termination of several *Nouns* ending in the fifth order is divided into two Consonants; the original letter being put into the sixth order, and a **P**: being added, to which the *Plural* ች: is affixed; e.g.

ጥምጥልሮች: similitudes, from **ጥምጥል**::

4. But besides this Amharic, we have the following Ethiopic *Plural* forms; which sometimes are applied, although the true Amh. *Plural* always may be put.

(a) Termination *an*.

For the Derivates, I. 1. II. 4. g. and some other forms; e.g.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
ቁደማ: holy.	ቁደማን: saints.	ፈረሰዊ: Pharisee.	ፈረሰዎች:
መበገ: wise.	መበገን::	ጃጥኑ: sinner.	ጃጥናን::
ከኝወር: living.	ከኝወርን::	ኋይድ: poor.	ኋይምን::
ሙተት: dead.	ሙተትን::	ሙያዣሁር: teacher.	ሙያዣሁራን::

Note.—Irregular: **አይሁዳዊ**: “Jew.” **አይሁዳ**: “Jews.”

(b) Termination *at*.

The Feminines of the *Plural Adjectives* in *an*.

ቁደማት: እያይተት: በረከተት: ከኝወጥ::

The Derivative forms terminating in *ān*.

መልጥን: authority. **መልዕጥቶ**:: **ብርሃን**: light. **ብርሃቶ**: lights.
ሐሙስ: infant. **ሐሙስቶ**: infants.

Besides these :

Singular.	Plural.
ብሔራም : heaven.	ብሔራምቶ : heavens.
ድመቶ : cloud.	ድመቶ : clouds.
ፈጽል : letter.	ፈጽሎ : letters.
ቍል : word.	ቍሎ : words.
ጥምህር : secret.	ጥምህሮ : secrets.

Some forms ending in the fifth order :

ጥምህል : likeness.	ጥምህልያ : likenesses.
ትዕ : time.	ትዕያ : times.

Words ending in the servile **ቶ**::

አመት : year.	አመታ : years.
ሰማዕት : martyr.	ሰማዕታ : martyrs.

Other forms :

አዋሪ : apostle.	አዋሪዎ : apostles.
ንዲስ : wind.	ንዲስዎ : winds.
ሕግ : law.	ሕግዎ : laws.
በት : house.	በቶ : houses.*
ካሁን : priest.	ካሁኖ : priests.
አክስ : metropolitan.	አክስዎ : metropolitans.
እክስወቅዱ : bishop.	እክስወቅዱዎ : bishops.
ደዋቀ : deacon.	ደዋቀዎ : deacons.

(c) Form **እግዢ**::

እገዢ : village.	እገዢዎ : villages.
-----------------------	-------------------------

(d) From **እግዢ**::

ወቶ : string.	እወቶ : strings.
ሕዝብ : people.	እሕዝብ : people.
ምፅ : bird.	እምፅ : birds.
በዕም : pillar.	እበዕም : pillars.

(e) **ነገት**::

Singular.

እገዢ : wild.	እገዢዎ : wild beasts.
ወጪ : beam.	ወጪዎ : army.

Plural.

* Used only in **እስያት**: **ክርስቲያኖ**: "Churches," from **የተ**: **ክርስቲያን**: "a Church."

(f) አጋብርቶ::

ቍብ: priest.
መንፈብ: spirit.
እጻዕስ: lion.
መዝኑን: judge.
ከንፈር: lip.
ተክብለ: star.
አጥላት: God.
ነዋር: leopard.
መልካት: angel.
መሰኗት: window.
ለቁ: chief.
የቁለ: mule.
ገኘት: demon.

Rare forms:

ገኘው: king.
ቆኔዘተብ: monk.

ቀበወብት: priests.
መፍራብት: spirits.
እያብብት: lions.
መክንናት: judges.
ከፍቅር: lips.
ተዋሕብት: stars.
አማልካት: gods.
እያምርት: leopards.
መለሳት: angels.
መሰኑት: windows.
ለቁወንት: chiefs.
የቁለቱ: and እገቁወጥቱ: mules.
አጋንጂት: demons.

ገኘው: and ጽኑመታት: kings.
ቆኔዘተብ: ቃደማዘተብ: & ቃደማዘተብ:
monks.

5. It is well to attend to these various forms, as they frequently occur in the Amharic Bible as well as in conversation: but it must be borne in mind, that they are all of Ethiopic origin, and superseded by the simple Amharic form *otsh*; and a beginner will never be mistaken in using the latter, until he is sufficiently acquainted with the language to know where he has to apply any of the other forms.

SECTION V.

On the Declension of the Nouns.

The Declension of Nouns is very simple and uniform. Nouns are inflected through four Cases, equally in the Singular and the Plural, i.e. the Nominative, the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative. One example may suffice to show the whole mode of proceeding:

Singular.

Nom. **ቤት**: a house.Gen. **የቤት**: of a house, a house's.Dat. **ለቤት**: to a house.Acc. **በቤት**: a house.

Plural.

ቤቶች: houses.**የቤቶች**: of houses.**ለቤቶች**: to houses.**በቤቶች**: houses.

OBSERVATIONS:

(a) The Genitive answers the Eth. **ዘ**:, and is not to be confounded with the Pronouns Relative or Distributive.

The Accusative Case must not be confounded with the Interrogative Adverb **՚**, nor with the termination **՚** of Nouns. On the Construction, and on the various uses of the Accusative, see Syntax.

2. It occasionally happens, that they make use of the Ethiopic Genitive or *status constructus*, i.e. that mode of construction which prevails in the Hebrew, and which has been noticed in the First Section of this Chapter, § 4. The two nouns, which stand in a genitive relation to each other, one of which is the *regens* (Nominative), and the other the *rectum* (Genitive), are so closely connected as to appear as one word. The Genitive follows the Nominative, and receives the tone or accent; in doing which, the preceding Noun, the Nominative, is modified: in the Hebrew it is shortened: in our case, the last letter, if it is of the sixth order, is changed into the first, and the two words are considered as one compound, separated merely by the (:) colon; but even this, in the Amharic, is often dropped, especially when the Genitive begins with a vowel consonant, or when it is a short word:

ገለ፡ በታ፡ and **ገለበታ፡** “master of the house.”

ገለቸ፡ for **ገለ፡ ቃቸ፡** “owner of debts,” i.e. “creditor” or “debtor.”

Another change is produced by the affixion of Pronouns to Nouns, of which we shall speak under the head of Inseparable Pronouns.

CHAP. II.

ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numerals are of two kinds, *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The Cardinals specify the number of things which are the subject of speech: the Ordinals exhibit the order in which they occur.

2. The *Cardinal Numbers* in the Amharic are as follow:

Cipher.	Amharic.	English.	Cipher.	Amharic.	English.
፩	1. { አንድ፡ f. አንድታ፡ }	One, a, an.	፩	30. ወላጥ፡	Thirty.
፪	2. ሂሳት፡	Two.	፪	40. { እርባ፡ or እርባብ፡ }	Forty.
፫	3. ሂሳት፡	Three.	፬	50. ጽጠጥ፡	Fifty.
፬	4. አራት፡	Four.	፭	60. ሰጋጥ፡ or ሰጋ፡	Sixty.
፭	5. አምስት፡	Five.	፮	70. ሰጣ፡ or ሰጠቅ፡	Seventy.
፮	6. ሰጠቅ፡	Six.	፯	80. ሰማንያ፡	Eighty.
፯	7. ሰባት፡	Seven.	፱	90. ንጠፍ፡	Ninety.
፱	8. ሰጠናት፡	Eight.	፲	100. መተ፡	Hundred.
፲	9. ንጠቃ፡	Nine.	፳	1000. ስሁ፡	Thousand.
፳	10. አመር፡	Ten.	፴	10000. እልፅ፡	Ten Thousand.
፴	20. ቃዋ፡	Twenty.			

Compound Cardinals.

ԵՇ: 11. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՀՅՃ:	Eleven.	ԻՇ: 16. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՈՒՅԾՈՒԴ:	Sixteen.
ԵՇ: 12. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՄՈՒԴ:	Twelve.	ԻՇ: 17. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՈՐԴ:	Seventeen.
ԵՇ: 13. ՀԳՄՃ.: ՐՈՒԴ:	Thirteen.	ԻՇ: 18. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՈԳՄԾՈՒԴ:	Eighteen.
ԵՇ: 14. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՀԸԴ:	Fourteen.	ԻՇ: 19. ՀԱՅՃ.: ԿՈՒՆ:	Nineteen.
ԵՇ: 15. ՀԱՅՃ.: ՀՊՄՈՒԴ:	Fifteen.		

The same order is observed with all the Tenth, to a Hundred; e.g.

ՍՔ: **ՀՅՃ::** **ՄԱԾՈՒ:** **ՄՈՒԴ::** **ՀԸԴ:** **ՐՈՒԴ:** &c.

The numbers upward of a Hundred are joined to the Hundreds by **Ի:** or **Դ:**; e.g.

ԲՇ: 106. **ՄՈՒԴ:** **ԻՈՒՅԾՈՒԴ::** One hundred and six.

ԲՇ: 160. **ՄՈՒԴ:** **ԴՈՒՈՒ:** or **ՄՈՒԴ:** **ԻՈՒՈՒ:** One hundred and sixty.

ԲՇ: 199. **ՄՈՒԴ:** **ԻԿՈՒԾ:** **ԿՈՒՆ:** . . . One hundred & ninety-nine.

ԲՇ: 200. **ՄՈՒԴ:** Two hundred.

ԼԽՎՃ: 1841. **ՈՒՍ:** **ԴՈՒՊՄԾՈՒԴ:** **ՄՈՒԴ:** **ԻԸԴ:** **ՀՅՃ:** or **ՀԱՅՃ.:** **ՈԳՄԾՈՒԴ:** **ՄՈՒԴ:** **ԻԸԴ:** **ՀՅՃ:** One Thousand Eight Hundred and Forty-one.

3. The *Ordinal Numbers* are formed by the termination **Ւ:** affixed to the *Cardinals*.

ՀՅՃՒ: ՄՈՒՅՏՈՎՃ.: } or ՃՒՒ: }	the First.	ՈՒՅԾՈՒԴՒ: the Sixth.
ՄՈՒԴՒ: the Second.		ՈՐԴՈՒ: the Seventh.
ՐՈՒԴՈՒ: the Third.		ՈԳՄԾՈՒԴՈՒ: the Eighth.
ՀԸԴՈՒ: the Fourth.		ԿՈՒՆՈՒ: and ԿՈՒՆՈՒ: the Ninth.
ՀՊՄՈՒԴՈՒ: the Fifth.		ՀԱՅՃՈՒ: the Tenth.
		ՀԱՅՃ.: ՄՈՒԴՈՒ: the Eleventh.

&c. &c.

The Simple Numbers, Twenty, Thirty, and upwards, scarcely admit of the termination **Ւ:**, but are generally given to the Cardinal form. In compounds, the last number receives the termination **Ւ:**; as,

ՍՔ: **ՀՅՃՒ:** **ԳՎՈՒՃ.:** the Twenty-first chapter.

4. They have no particular form for the Distributive Numbers; but they express them, either by reiteration, as,

ՀՅՃ: **ՀՅՃ:** (contr. **ՀՅՃՀՅՃ:**) one-by-one, some, several, one or other, singly, severally.

ՄՈՒԴ: **ՄՈՒԴ:** two-and-two;

Or by እር: or እር: as,

እ.የንድንድ፡ each, every. እ.የሁለት፡ by twos, by pairs, two-and-two, every two, every couple, &c. &c.

የየኩስ፡ ቀን፡ every three days.

CHAP. III.

ON THE PRONOUNS.

1. The Amharic *Pronouns* are, as to their *logical* character, divided, as in other languages, into, 1. Personal; 2. Possessive; 3. Demonstrative; 4. Relative; 5. Interrogative; 6. Reflective; and 7. Distributive Pronouns. As to their *forms*, they are classed, as in other Semitic Languages, into Separable and Inseparable Pronouns. We begin with the *Separable Pronouns*. They are Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Reflective.

SECTION I.

Separable Personal Pronouns.

They are Three for the Singular, and Three for the Plural. The Singular has some peculiarities. The First Person has not the Gender expressed: the Second and Third have distinct forms for the Masculine and for the Feminine Gender: the Second Person has, besides, three distinctions of honour, as the following Paradigm shows:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.
1 Pers.	እኔ፡ I.		እኔ፡ we.
2 Pers. እኔ፡		እኔ፡ } thou. እኔ፡ } thou.	እኔ፡ you.
	እኔ፡ } you. እኔዎ፡ } you.		
3 Pers. እርዎ፡ he, it.		እርዎ፡ she, it.	እርዎች፡ they.

NOTE. (a) On the application of the three different forms for the Second Person: እኔ፡ and እኔ፡ are applied to inferiors, to God, to intimate friends; and in universal address, where you need not pay any regard to rank, &c. እኔ፡ is used for a *lesser*; እርዎ፡ for a *higher* degree of honour. These two forms resemble the German *Ihr* (in Switzerland *Er*), and *Sie*, and the Italian *Voi* and *Lei*, for the Second Person Singular.

(b) In speaking of a *distinguished* person, the form of the Third Person Plural is used, as a mark of honour.

2. The Declension is the same as with the Nouns.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
Com. N. አለ፡ I.	Masc. አንተ፡ thou.	Fem. አንተ፡ ከርዕም፡ you.	Fem. አንተ፡ ከርዕም፡ she, it.
G. የለ፡ { of me, my. mine.	Fem. ያንተ፡ የንተ፡ thy,	Com. የንተ፡ የርዕም፡ { of thee, your,	Masc. የንተ፡ የርዕም፡ { of him, it,
D. አለ፡ to me, me.	አንተ፡ ላንተ፡ to thee, thee.	አንተ፡ ላንተ፡ to you, you.	የንተ፡ የርዕም፡ { of her, her,
A. አለ፡ me.	አንተ፡ እንተ፡ thee.	አንተ፡ እንተ፡ you.	የንተ፡ የርዕም፡ { hers, its.
G. የለ፡ { of me, my. mine.		D. አለ፡ to me, me.	
A. አለ፡ me.		A. አለ፡ me.	
PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1 Pers. አለ፡ we.	2 Pers. አለንተ፡ ye, you.	2 Pers. የለንተ፡ ye, you.	3 Pers. የለንተዎ፡ they.
Gen. የለ፡ of us, our, ours.	Gen. የለንተ፡ of you, your, yours.	Gen. የለንተ፡ of them, their, theirs.	Gen. የለንተዎ፡ of them, their, theirs.
Dat. አለ፡ to us.	Dat. አለንተ፡ to you.	Dat. የለንተ፡ to them.	Dat. የለንተዎ፡ to them.
Acc. አለ፡ us.	Acc. አለንተ፡ you.	Acc. የለንተ፡ them.	Acc. የለንተዎ፡ them.

Thus far the Separable Personal Pronouns. The Inseparable Personal Pronouns are those Verbal Suffixes which will be mentioned in their proper place.

SECTION II.

Separable Possessive Pronouns.

They are formed by the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns; and are as follows:

Singular.

የለ: my, mine.

የንተ: m. **የንች**: f. thy, thine.

የንቃ:: **የርስዎ**: your, yours.

የርስ: m. his. **የርስዎ**: f. her, hers.

Plural.

የገኑ: our, ours.

የእንተ: your, yours.

የርሱቸው: their, theirs.

SECTION III.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

They are two in number; one for near, and one for remote objects.

1. *Demonstrative for Near Objects.*

የዚ: masc. **የዚች**: or **የች**: fem. "This."

Shoa Dialect: **እኔህ**: masc. **እኔህች**: fem.

DECLEMNATION.

COMMON FORM, IRREGULAR.

SINGULAR.

Masc.

Nom. **የዚ**:: **የዚች**: contr. **የች**: this.

Gen. **የዚህ**::

የዚህች: ... **የዚች**: of this.

Dat. **ለዚህ**::

ለዚህች: ... **ለዚች**: to this.

Acc. **የዚን**: & **የዚንች**::

የዚንች: ... **የችን**: this.

PLURAL.

Common Gender.

Nom. **እኔዚ**: or **እኔዚች**: contr. **እኔዚ**: these.

Gen. **የእኔዚ**: ... **የእኔዚች**: ... **የእኔዚ**: of these.

Dat. **ለእኔዚ**: ... **ለእኔዚች**: ... **ለእኔዚ**: to these.

Acc. **እኔዚን**: ... **እኔዚንች**: ... **እኔዚን**: these.

SHOA FORM, REGULAR.

SINGULAR.

Masc.

Fem.

N. **እኔ**: **እኔች**: this.

G. **የእኔ**: **የእኔች**: of this.

D. **ለእኔ**: **ለእኔች**: to this.

A. **እኔን**: **እኔችን**: this.

PLURAL.

Common.

እኔዚ: or **እኔዚች**:

contr. **እኔዚ**: &c. the same as above, but the **ዚ**: prevailing throughout.

ANOTHER REGULAR FORM, OCCASIONALLY USED IN SHOA.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.		Com.
N. ኋህ:	ኋህተ: contr. ኋቶ::	ኋላሮሁ:	contr. የለሁ::
G. የለሁ:	የለሁተ: . . . የለቶ::	የለሁሁ:	... የለሁ::
D. አለሁ:	አለሁተ: . . . አለቶ::	አለሁሁ:	... አለሁ::
A. ለሁን:	ለሁተን: . . . ለቶን::	ለለሁሁን:	... ለለሁ::

2. For Remote Objects.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.		Common.
N. ያ:	ያቶ:: that.	ኋላከያ: & ኋነከያ:	contr. ኋልያ: those.
G. የከያ:	የከያቶ:: of that.	የለከያ: & የተከያ:	... የልያ: of those.
D. አከያ:	አከያቶ:: to that.	አለከያ: & አተከያ:	... አልያ: to those.
A. ያን:	ያቶን:: that.	ኋለከያን: & ኋነከያን:	... ኋልያን: those.

FORM OCCASIONALLY OCCURRING IN SHOA.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.		
N. ኋዘ:	ኋዘቶ:: that.		Like the above, only contracting
G. የዘ:	የዘቶ:: of that.		ዘ: to ዘ::
D. አዘ:	አዘቶ:: to that.		
A. ኋዘን:	ኋዘቶን:: that.		

NOTE.—The Demonstrative Pronouns form Adverbs; which see, under the head of Adverbs.

SECTION IV.

Interrogative Pronouns.

There are four: One Personal, **ሙን:** pl. **ኋላሙን:** "who?" "which?" "what sort of?" One Impersonal, **ምን:** "which?" "what?" One Common, **የተ:** "what?" "which?" One Universal, **ምንድር:** "what?"

The Personal is **ሙን:** "who?" "which?" e.g.

ሙን: **እረጋገጥ:** **ሙን:** Who did this?

ይህ: **ሙን:** **ዮዥ:** (or **ማካዥ:**) Who is this?

ነውለቱ: **ሙን:** Which of both?

The Impersonal is **ምን:** "which?" "what?" e.g.

ምን: **እረጋገጥ:** What hast thou done?

ምን: **በተ:** Which house?

The Universal Interrogative Pronoun is **ጥዃጽር**: "what?" e.g.

ይህ፡ ተዃጽር፡ ካወ፡ *What is this?*

ሙን፡ and **ጥዃ፡** are declinable, thus :

SINGULAR.

Pers.	Impers.
Nom. ሙን፡ who? which?	ጥዃ፡ what? which?
Gen. የሙን፡ of whom? whose? of which?	የጥዃ፡ of what? of which? whose?
Dat. ለሙን፡ to (for) whom? to (for) which?	ለጥዃ፡ to (for) what? to (for) which? wherefore?
Acc. ሙንን፡ whom? which?	ጥዃን፡ what? which?

PLURAL.

Nom. እለሙን፡ who? which?	እለጥዃ፡ which?
Gen. የእለሙን፡ whose? of which?	የእለጥዃ፡ of which? whose?
Dat. ለእለሙን፡ to whom? to which?	ለእለጥዃ፡ to which?
Acc. እለሙንን፡ whom? which?	እለጥዃን፡ which?

ጥዃጽር: has no Plural; and is defective in the Singular, having no Accusative Case.

Besides the preceding, they have the Interrogative Pronoun **የት፡** or Euphonic **የተ፡** "what?" "who?" "which?" It is indeclinable, and used chiefly in forming Adverbs, by joining with Prepositions; as, **እንደታ፡ ወደታ፡ ወደቻ፡** &c.

SECTION V.

Reflective Pronouns.

They are three, **የለበታ፡ ጽብ፡** and **ኩብ፡** with the signification of *self*. They assume the Suffixes of the Possessive Pronoun, as in the English *myself*, *thyself*, &c. So is in all Abyssinia **ጽብ፡** with Suffixes **ጽብ፡ ጽብሁ፡ ጽብኩ፡ ጽብው፡ ጽብኩ፡ ጽብዋ፡ ጽብኩን፡ ጽብኩሁ፡ ጽብኩው፡** "myself," "thyself," &c. **የለበታ፡** with Suffixes, is not used in Shoa; but in N.W. Abyssinia, it is common. **ኩብ፡** with Suffixes is used in all Abyssinia, though not so often as **ጽብ፡** But the reflective mode of speaking is more frequently used in Verbs, without these Pronouns, as will be shown afterwards.

SECTION VI.

Distributive Separable Pronoun.

This is **እያንዳንድ፡** "each," "every," with Suffixes. As it is composed of a double **እንዳ፡** and the distributive **እያ፡** it has been numbered already among the Distributive Numerals.

SECTION VII.

Indefinite Pronouns.

These are the following:

սոյշտօ: any, each, every one, whoever, whosoever.

սոյշթօր: m. **սոյշթլի:** fem. whosoever.

Ա-Ճ: all, each, every, any.

ՀԱ: other.

ՀՅՁՒ: some, something.

1. **սոյշտօ:** **սոյշթօր:** and **սոյշթլի:** are used only in the Singular, nor receive they any Suffix. When used with the Verb in the negative, they adopt the reverse to their natural signification, "none," "none whatever."

2. **Ա-Ճ:** is rather the Substantive **ԱՃ:** "totality," with Suffixes. It assumes all Suffixes, and is declinable; but has no Plural.

3. **ՀԱ:** is used in both the Plural and the Singular Numbers, and is declinable.

4. **ՀՅՁՒ:** is declinable, and used only in the Singular.

5. **ՀՔՆ:** "some," "several," is declinable, and has but one number. Besides this, the words, "some" and "such," are circumscribed by Verbs; e.g. "Some men like it," **բազՓԼՒ:** **ՀՃ:** lit. "There are men who like it." "Such:" **ՀՅՁՒ:** **ՔՃ:** or pl. **ՀՅՁՒ:** **ՔՃ:** "who is," or "who are so."

SECTION VIII.

Inseparable Pronouns.

They are, with regard to their character, Personal, Possessive, Relative, and Distributive; and with regard to their position, they are either Prefixes or Suffixes.

1. *Personal Suffixes to Verbs.**

They consist partly in modifications of the Personal Pronoun; and are annexed to any part of the Verb except the Infinitive; for that Mood, being considered in this respect as a Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes.

* We do not speak of those personal designations the Verbs receive at their beginning or end; because they are so intimately connected with the Verb, that we cannot consider them separately.

The following Table contains them all :

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3.	ăΦ· ՚	him.	ă՚ ՚	them.	
2.	՚	thee.	՚		
.. honorif. 1.	.	.	ă՚ ՚	you.	
.. 2.	.	.	ăΦ·	you.	}
1.	.	.	՚	me.	՚: perfect. ՚: pres. &c., us.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	1.	2.
Suff. 1.	ԹՈՓ՚:	he protected me.		ԹՈՓ՚:	he protected us.
.. 2.	ԹՈՓ՚:	he protected		ԹՈՓ՚: (imp.) protect us!	
.. . .	ԹՈՓ՚:	thee.		2. ԹՈՓ՚:	he protected you.
.. . hon.	ԹՈՓ՚:	he protect-		3. ԹՈՓ՚:	he protected them.
	ԹՈՓ՚:	ed you.			
.. 3.	ԹՈՓ՚:	{ he protected			
		{ him.			
	ԹՈՓ՚:	he protected her.			

NOTE.—Suffix 3d pers. sing. masc. to Prepositions has ՚; e.g.

Ո՚: in him.

Ո՚: to, or for him.

2. Possessive Suffixes to Nouns.

They are, to a certain degree, similar to the preceding.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3.	՚, or ՚:	his.	՚: her.	3. ՚:	their.
.. hon.	.	.	՚:	his, her.	
2. com.	՚:	thy.	՚:		2. ՚:
.. hon. 1.	.	.	՚:	your.	
.. . . 2.	.	.	՚:	your.	
1.	.	.	՚:	my.	1. ՚:

Ex.—Ո՚: "House," with Suffixes.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3.	Ո՚:	his house.	Ո՚:	their h.	Ո՚:
.. hon.	.	.	Ո՚:	his (her) h.	
2.	Ո՚:	thy house.	Ո՚:	your h.	Ո՚:
.. hon. 1.	.	.	Ո՚:	your house.	
.. . . 2.	.	.	Ո՚:	my house.	Ո՚:
1.	.	.			

3. *Prefixed Relative Pronouns.*

There are two; i.e. **P**: for the Preterite, and **ՊՊ**: for the rest; e.g. **ՊՈՎՈՒ**: **ՈՒ**: "the man who came." **ՊՈՎՈՎՈՒ**: **ՓՅ**: "The day which comes"; i.e. "the coming," "following day." See more under the Verbs.

4. *Prefixed Distributive Pronoun.*

There is but one, which has been mentioned already, under the Numerals: it is, **ՀԱՅ**: or **ՀԱՅ**: **ՀԱՅԻՌՈՒ**: **ՓՅ**: "Every three days." Prepositions have the power of absorbing the first letter; when care must be taken not to confound the remaining **P** — with the Relative Pronoun; bearing in mind, that the Relative itself would be absorbed by the Preposition: nor stands it, except before Verbs.

CHAP. IV.

ON THE VERBS.

The Verb being, next to the Noun, the most essential part of speech, we are to give it our fullest consideration. In entering upon it, we treat, 1. On its Formation and Quality; 2. On the Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs; 3. On their Flexion; 4. On their Conjugation; 5. On the Affixion of Pronouns to Verbs.

SECTION I.

Formation and Quality of Verbs.

1. The Verb, in general, seems to represent the chief development of those roots of the language which are contained in the Noun. The original idea of the Noun is exhibited as a thing of time, found in a certain condition, and undergoing or producing various actions and changes. This consideration implies, that the Verb, in general, originates in the Noun. In the Hebrew, we can trace its course from the Primitive Nominal Form, through the Participle (in Kal), to the 3d pers. masc. preterite; the latter being, in all the Semitic Languages, the grammatical root of the Verb. In the Amharic, the Constructive Mood, of which we shall speak afterwards, seems to be the medium of transition from the Primitive Noun to the 3d pers. masc. preterite of the Verb.

2. Now the latter, the 3d masc. pers. sing. of the preterite in the Simple Forms of Verbs, constitutes, as has been just now alluded to, the origin of all the other Verbal Forms; the same as, in our languages, the Infinitive; or in the Greek, the Latin, the Italian, and others, the 1st pers. sing. of the present tense; on this account it is put forward, for grammatical and

lexical purposes, as the radix, or rather (because the true radices of the Verbs are contained in the Noun) as the stem, from which all the other forms branch off. In the Amharic, it presents various formations, as well as the Noun—bilitera, trilitera, quadrilatera, and plurilatera: but in it, as well as in the Noun, the majority consists of trilateral forms; which majority is still augmented, whenever the present contracted biliteral forms, and many plurilaterals evidently amplified, are restored to their original fulness or simplicity.

3. In reference to *Quality*, theh, the Verbs present two grand divisions; i.e. *Perfect* and *Imperfect* Verbs, which again may be sub-divided in other classes. *Perfect* Verbs are those which are flexible in, at least, several Derivations, and throughout all the Moods, Tenses, and Persons in Conjugation, without losing any of their Radicals. *Imperfect* Verbs are either Defective, Augmented, or Irregular.

NOTE.—(a) Perfect Verbs may be divided into Primitives, i.e. whose origin cannot be traced to any further root; and Derivatives, which have for their origin either a Noun (Denominatives), or another Verb (Verbals). We subjoin here a few specimens of each.

PRIMITIVES.

ΦΩΣ: he buried.

συλπή: he turned, returned.

πάρε: he worshipped.

Φωδ: he chastised.

πάζ: he covered.

DENOMINATIVES.

Original Noun.

τίκος: he was honoured.

γέλα: he revealed.

συλητός: he testified.

τίνοται: he remained.

πένητος: was flatulent.

ασυλφά: crucified.

τίκη: honour.

γέλα: the public.

συλητής: witness.

τίνοται: Sabbath.

πένητη: blessing.

ασυλφά: cross, crucifix.

VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Original Verb.

συλητής: he was glorious.

συωβάτη: he laid a foundation.

τί: it flourished, he was glorious.

ωζ: he built.

(b) Under Defective Verbs, we mean, (1) Those which occasionally lose some of the Radicals; and (2) Such as have not all the Moods or Tenses, or Persons in conjugation. They will be mentioned in their proper places.

(c) Irregular Verbs are of various kinds :

- A. Such in which the Afformatives are irregular.
- B. Such as have either the first or second, or second and third Radical Letters contracted.
- C. Geminants.
- D. Reduplicated and Transposed forms.

All these will be exhibited, with their respective Conjugations, after the Regular or Perfect Verb.

SECTION II.

Various Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs.

1. In every language, the original idea of a Verb must be determinable by the relation of the subject to the object; and those various relations must be in some way or other expressible by the form of the Verb. The state of any subject of speech, or its action, is either confined to itself, or it exerts an influence on an object, or is itself the object of extraneous influence. This circumstance renders, in every language, three classes of Verbs, or three conditions of the same verb, necessary; i.e. neutrality (immanence), action upon other objects, and suffering. In the English Grammars, these qualities are called *Voices*; in the Semitic languages, *Conjugations*, or better, *Derivations*.

2. The ways to express these Voices are different in different languages, according to the pliability and vigour the latter possess.

The more original and vigorous a language is, we conceive, the more will it be able to derive all it requires, for the purpose of expressing the various relations of the verb, from the original verb itself, without the assistance of auxiliaries, and without circumscription: and this seems to show the superiority of the Semitic over the European Languages; because the former fully possess that power, while the latter are deficient in it.

In the English, the Passive Voice is not expressible, but by the Auxiliary *To be*. The Greek language has the power of expressing it by a change of the Active in the termination, converting ω in *ouai*, &c. The Transitive is, in a few instances, formed by a change of the vowel, as "to fell" (i.e. make fall), from "to fall"; sometimes by Prepositions, as "to enforce," "to belabour," &c.; but, on the whole, European languages are deficient in this respect.

3. In the Semitic languages, the form of the original verb is altered, either by the mere change of vowels in the same radical consonants, or by an addition of servile letters with a suitable change of vowels, in order to express the various determinations and modifications, i.e. Voices or Conjugations, of which the verb is susceptible. Of these derivations, the

Hebrew Verb has seven; the Arabic, thirteen; the Ethiopic, ten different forms. For the Amharic, Ludolf has assigned but four Conjugations; but an attention to the following will show that there are many more.

4. As the Triliterals are the most numerous and the most perfect words, we present the reader, first, with a list of all the Forms of Conjugation, to which the perfect Trilateral Verb is liable. And since all these forms do not proceed from any single stem, we take several stems together. The Verbs which will serve us for this purpose are the following:

סָמַלְתִּי : <i>act.</i> he returned.	בָּזַקְתִּי : he burst.
נִירָא : he was glorious, respectable. (אֲנֹרֶת : non occ.)	
בָּזַרְתִּי : he reviled.	אָזַרְתִּי : he did.
יָדָעָה : he said.	גִּזְעָה : was blunt.
סְמַגְתִּי : he contradicted.	אַטָּה : spun.
סְמַלְתִּי : he resembled.	וְצַפֵּה : he fulminated.*
וְלָזַרְתִּי : he descended.	

LIST OF CONJUGATIONS OF THE REGULAR AND PERFECT TRILITERAL VERB.

- I. **ՏԱՂԻ**: *act.* "he returned," "repeated." **ԴՈՒՀ**: *neut.* "he was respectable."
- II. **ԴՐՈ**: *intens.* "he scolded exceedingly."
- III. **ՃՈՇՎ**: *trs.* "he honoured."
- IV. **ԴՄՈՂԻ**: *pass.* "was returned." *refl.* "returned."
- V. **ՃՄԿԱ**: *trs. & caus.* "he made speak," "caused to speak."
- VI. **ԴՔԿԱ**: *contin.* "he spoke." *intens.* **ԴՈՒԽՈ**: "reviled," "blasphemed;" *i.q.* **ԴՐՈ**:: **ԴՊՈՒՀ**: *recipr.* "he counselled," "gave and took advice."
- VII. **ԴՄՎԳԴԵ**: *recipr.* "he disputed."
- VIII. **ՃՈՄՈՂԻ**: *caus.* "he caused to return."

* These are the known forms of each of these Verbs: **መለሰ፡ ተመለሰ፡ አስመለሰ፡**
ተመለሰ፡ ተመለሰ፡ ከበደ፡ እከበደ፡ እስከበደ፡ ስደበ፡ ስደበ፡
እስደበ፡ ተስደበ፡ እስደበ፡ ተስደበ፡ የበደ፡ እየበደ፡ ተየበደ፡ ተየበደ፡
ደንበ፡ እየንበ፡ እውቢንበ፡ ሚግ-ጥ፡ ተማግ-ጥ፡ ተምዋጥ፡
መሰለ፡ ተመሰለ፡ እስመሰለ፡ እስመሰለ፡ ወረዳ፡ እውረዳ፡ እዋረዳ፡
ተዋረዳ፡ ተዋዋረዳ፡ ወረዳ፡ ስበደ፡ እስበደ፡ ተስበደ፡ ስባበደ፡
ተስበደ፡ (ይደገ፡) እድፈገ፡ ተድፈገ፡ እስድፈገ፡ እድፈፈገ፡ ይዘክ፡
እድዘክ፡ ይዘክ፡ እድዘክ፡ ፍ-ትለ፡ ተፍ-ትለ፡ እስፍ-ትለ፡ ፍ-ትለ-ትለ፡
ተፍ-ትለ-ትለ፡ ቤታዊ፡ እንጂጂታዊ፡

- ix. አስመሰሳል: *caus.* & *intens.* "he caused to resemble," "dissimulated," "flattered."
- x. አስተኞረድ: *caus.* "he made speak." አስተኞረድ: "procured forgiveness." አስተኞረድ: *reiter.* "he inhaled and exhaled," "he breathed," "breathed."
- xi. ተዋዋረድ: *intens., pass., & refl.* "he was completely humbled," "humbled himself completely."
- xii. የገበድ: *intens.* "broke into pieces."
- xiii. አደራጋ: *intens.* "he performed great things."
- xiv. ተመለከት: *reiter.* "he returned repeatedly;" *i. e.* "walked." ተመከተለድ: *recipr.* "he consulted with others," "took and gave advice."
- xv. ተጥጋነድ: *reiter. & recipr.* "conversed with another," "spoke frequently."
- xvi. የዘዝዘ: *intens. & intrans.* "to be blunt," "stiff," "obdurate."
- xvii. አየዘዝዘ: *trs.* "to blunt," "stiffen," "obdurate."
- xviii. ተመለከት: *refl. & pass.* "he returned," "was returned."
- xix. ተጠመጥበት: "he reviled."
- xx. አፈጸነድ: *intens.* "he talked one out of any thing," "dissuaded."
- xxi. አውቃዋንድ: "he folded his hands."
- xxii. ፍተላተሉል: "he rubbed thin between his fingers."
- xxiii. አንጻጻቢዬ: *diminut.* "it shone," "glittered," "sparkled," "re-splended."

These Forms are not of equally frequent occurrence. Those occurring most frequently, are, Nos. i. iii. iv. v. vi. viii. x. xiv. and xv. The rest are more rare.*

5. Observations on this List:—Most of the forms it contains are analogous to the forms of derivation in the Hebrew, the Arabic, and more especially in the Ethiopic Verb; which will be evident from the following remarks:

i. συλή: comprises the Ethiopic and Arabic i. and ii. forms, and the Hebrew *Kal* and *Piel*.

* We beg to observe here, that, on account of the haste in which the Dictionary was prepared for press, the Forms xvi. to xxiii. were not arranged in it under their roots; as the Author was not then aware, that they were simple derivations from the Trilateral Verb. To this conviction he arrived when drawing up this Grammar.

II. ተቋዢ፡; of rare occurrence, answers the Ethiopic and Arabic iii. form, قَاعِلْ: and فَاعِلْ.

III. አነበረ፡ answers to the Ethiopic iv. and v., and to the Arabic iv.

IV. ተመለሰ፡ corresponds with the Eth. vi. and vii., and with the Arabic v.

V. አይገሩ፡ "he made speak," answers the Arabic xi.

VI. ተፍገሩ፡ "he spoke," answers the Eth. vii. ተጋበረ፡ and Arabic vi. تَفَاعَلْ.

VII. ተግዢዋጥ፡ seldom occurs, and has no correspondent in the other languages.

VIII. IX. and X. answer the Ethiopic and Arabic x. አስተዋዢ፡ وَسْتَقْعُلْ!

The rest are peculiar to the Amharic; although modifications of the same forms occur, especially in the Arabic.

6. Before we proceed, we notice the Conjugations of the other classes of Verbs:

I. TRILITERALS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL.

They are affected by the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 2. B. 3. C.

The following list contains their several conjugations:

Radices, አሙኑ፡ "he believed"; and አለፈ፡ "he passed."

I. አሙኑ፡ "he believed."

II. ተሙኑ፡ "he was believed," "creditable," "trustworthy"; "he entrusted."

III. አማሙኑ፡ "he persuaded," "he made believe."

IV. አስተሙኑ፡ "he entrusted," "accredited," "attested."

V. ተለለፈ፡ "he trespassed," "varied."

VI. አስተተለፈ፡ recipr. & trs. "he made pass in different ways."*

* Other Verbs of this class: አረሙ፡ አረሰ፡ አረቀ፡ አረහ፡ አረደ፡ አረገ፡
አረጋ፡ በረዳ፡ አዋዲ፡ አቦረ፡ አቦድ፡ አቦጋ፡ አቶሙ፡ አንበ፡ አንዋ፡
አንጽ፡ አከለ፡ አውዋ፡ አውቦ፡ አከላ፡ አካና፡ አዶላ፡ አዶሙ፡ አዶደ፡
አዶሰ፡ አዶና፡ አዶግ፡ አጋም፡ አገዛ፡ አመረ፡ አጋድ፡ አጋብ፡
አጋድ፡ አጋሰ፡ አጋቦ፡ አጋረ፡ ሰጠዋ፡ ሰጠዋ፡ The Dictionary shows, that
the original Forms of these Verbs are not all of prima አ፡; but in the Amharic, they may be all
comprised in this form.

II. GEMINANT TRILITERALS.

They are originally Bilaterals, whose second radical letter has been doubled. See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.

List of Trilateral Geminants.

- I. ΔΦΦ: *intrs.* & *act.* "went away," "dismissed."
- II. ΚΖΦΦ: *trs.* "he thinned," "rarefied."
- III. ΤΛΦΦ: *pass.* "he was dismissed"; *refl.* "he abandoned himself."
- IV. ΚΛΦΦ: *intens.* "he yawned." ΚΠΞΞ: "he persecuted."
- V. ΤΠΞΞ: *pass.* *int.* "he was persecuted."
- VI. ΚΠΙΣΞΞ: *caus.* "he embittered," "exasperated."
- VII. ΚΞΠΤΤ: "he glided down" on his posteriors; "he cheated."
- VIII. ΤΞΠΤΤ: *pass.* "he was pushed down," "was cheated."
- ΤΞΓΛΔ: "he fornicated."
- IX. ΚΞΠΞΞ: } "stretched himself." *
- X. ΤΞΠΞΞ: }

III. GEMINANTS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL. †

- I. ΚΜΟΜΟ: *intrs.* "was painful"; *trs.* "gave pain."
- II. ΤΜΟΜΟ: *pass.* "felt pain."
- III. ΚΗΜΟΜΟ: *caus.* "gave pain," "made sick."
- IV. ΚΠΤΜΟΜΟ: *sympathetic,* "nursed sick persons."

IV. PERFECT BILITERALS. ‡

- I. ΓΓ: "was beautiful." ΡΡ: "was great."
- II. ΚΓΓ: "beautified," "praised." ΚΞΓ: "he grew."
- III. ΤΠΩ: "was given."

* These Verbs are very numerous. Cf. in the Dictionary ΔΦΦ: ΔΗΗ: ΔΜΩ:
ΜΞΞ: ΜΥΗ: ΜΩΓΓ: ΛΦΦ: ΗΔΔ: ΠΔΔ: ΠΞΞ: ΠΦΦ:
ΠΞΞ: ΠΔΔ: ΠΛΔ: ΠΞΞ: ΠΤΤ: ΦΔΔ: ΦΞΞ: ΠΞΞ: ΖΗΗ:
ΤΔΔ: ΖΗΗ: ΖΞΞ: ΖΜΩ: ΗΞΞ: ΗΠΗ: ΗΠΗ: ΗΠΗ:
Η-ΖΗ: ΦΞΞ: ΦΞΞ: ΗΔΔ: ΞΗΗ: ΞΦΦ: ΖΔΔ: Τ-ΔΔ: ΖΞΞ:
ΖΤΤ: ΖΞΞ: Τ-ΞΞ: ΖΔΔ: ΜΜΜ: ΜΞΞ: ΖΠΠ: ΖΠΠ:
ΖΠΠ: ΔΗΗ:

† ΚΜΟΜΟ: ΚΔΔ: ΖΗΗ: ΖΗΗ: ΖΗΗ:

‡ ΓΓ: ΡΡ: ΜΥΗ: ΠΠΗ: ΛΞΞ: ΠΩ: ΠΞΞ: ΠΤΤ: ΦΔΔ: ΦΞΞ: ΠΞΞ:
ΠΩ: ΤΤ: ΖΜΩ: ΜΜΩ:

- iv. አስተና: “he beautified,” “glorified.”
- v. አሳደግ: “made grow,” “trained,” “educated.”
- vi. ገኑ: “flourished.”
- vii. አገኑ: “made to flourish.”
- viii. ተሰጥዣ: “to betray each other.”

V. IMPERFECT BILITERALS. Prima 5

- i. **ՀՊ:** "he saw."
- ii. **ԴՊ:** *pass.* "was seen," "appeared."
- iii. **ՀՈՎՊ:** *trs.* "made to see," "showed."
- iv. **ՀՈՎԴՊ:** *trs.* "made to be seen," "brought into sight."
- v. **ԴՊՊ:** *recipr.* "looked at each other," "was over against each other."
"made look at each other."

VI. DEFECTIVE VERBS; i.e. Verbs which have dropped one or two Radical Letters, either in the middle or at the end.

1. Verbs with Absorbed Guttural at the end.

- I. ገበ: *intrs.* "he entered." Eth. ተጠኑ:
- II. እገበ: *trs.* "he introduced."
- III. ተግበ: "it was proper," "becoming," "it belonged."
- IV. እጋበ: *act.* "he married."
- V. ተጋበ: *pass.* "was married."
- VI. እስተዋዣ: *caus.* "made go in," "introduced."
- VII. በቃቃ: *intens.* "was quite sufficient."
- VIII. እገባባ: *reiter.* "used to marry," "frequently cohabited," "behaved properly."
- IX. እጽታቃ: *intens.* "he comforted."
- X. ተጽታቃ: *pass.* "was comforted." ተከራካሪ: *recipr.* "quarrelled with each other."*

* Of the same class are the following: ՂՐ: ԽՃ: ՂՃ: ԽՃ: ՑՃ: ՄՃ: ԽՃ:
ՆՎ: ԱՄՎ: ԱՒՃ: ՄՄՃ: ՈՃ: ՄՄՃ: ՄՄՃ: ԽՎ: ԽՓ: ՄՄՃ: ՄՄՃ:
ԱՃ: ՈՃ: ՄՎ: ՀՄՃ: ՀՎ: ՀՄՃ: ՀՎ: ՀՎ: ՈՃ: ՄՄՃ: ԿՎ:
ՈՊ: ՈՒՃ: ՈՃ: ՓՃ: ՓՎ: ՓՎ: ՓՎ: ՓՎ: ՓՎ: ՈՎ: ՈՎ:
ՈՒՃ: ՈՎ: ՈՎ: ՈՎ: ՏՃ: ՏՎ: ՏՎ: ՏՎ: ՏՎ: ՏՎ: ՏՎ:
ԽՃ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ: ԽՎ:
ՂՃ: ՂՎ: ՂՎ: &c.

2. *Verbs with Absorbed Guttural in the middle.*

- I. ΣΨΛ: Eth. ΣΨΦΛ: "he swore."
- II. ΚΨΠΛ: trs. "made swear," "administered an oath."
- III. ΤΨΦΛ: pass. "was sworn."
- IV. ΚΠΨΦΛ: trs. "made swear."
- V. ΚΨΦΛ: frequentat. "distributed by casting lots."
- VI. ΤΨΦΨΦΛ: recipr. "mutually swore," "conspired."
- VII. ΤΨΦΛΛ: intens. "besought," "adjured."*

3. *Verbs with an Absorbed Ρ: in the middle. †*

- I. ΠΙΡΩ: act. "he sold." ΦΙΡΩ: neutr. "he went."
- II. ΚΗΦΩ: trs. "he made go," "drove the threshing oxen."
- III. ΤΙΡΗΛ: pass. "was sold."
- IV. ΤΗΡΩ: "he traded." ΤΗΡΩ: "made a treaty."
- V. ΚΠΗΦΩ: caus. "made go."

4. *Verbs with an Absorbed Θ: in the middle ‡.*

- I. ΦΘΩ: neut. "he stood."
- II. ΚΦΘΩ: trs. "made to stand," "erected."
- III. ΤΦΘΩ: pass. "was erected."
- IV. ΤΤΦΘΩ: intens. "he withstood," "resisted."
- V. ΚΠΤΦΘΩ: caus. "he detained," "caused to wait."
- VI. ΤΦΦΘΩ: } intens. "ultimately resisted."
- VII. ΤΦΦΘΩ: }

5. *Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadrilaterals. They are but few in number, and only three Conjugations have been discovered §.*

- I. ΛΛ: "to be loose," "lax."
- II. ΚΛΛΛ: act. "to loosen," "slacken."
- III. ΤΓΨΛ: intens. "to stamp," "pound," "clapper," "to chatter."

* See also the following Verbs: ΛΠ: ΛΦ: ΛΠ: ΛΩ: ΛΔ: ΣΨΛ: ΣΨΖ: ΣΨΠ: ΞΦ: ΣΨΓ: ΣΨΘ: ΣΨΔ: ΣΨΛ: ΞΦ: ΞΠ: ΞΔ: ΗΨΦ: ΗΨΦ: ΗΠ: ΗΤ: ΗΠ: ΗΛ: ΗΖ: ΗΤ: ΖΛ: ΖΞ: ΙΗΠ: ΙΗΔ: ΦΔ: ΦΠ: ΦΖ: ΦΤ: ΗΓ: ΕΔ: ΕΠ: ΕΖ: ΕΛ: ΕΤ: ΕΗ: ΨΔ::

† ΠΙΩ: ΚΛΔ: (ΠΞΔ:) ΛΛ: ΠΙΣ: ΠΛΠ: ΕΗΔ::

‡ ΜΗ: ΖΨΦ: ΖΨΤ: ΖΨΩ: ΖΨΨ: ΦΨΩ: ΦΡ: ΞΖ: ΙΗΔ: ΗΔ: ΧΨΩ::

§ ΛΛ: ΖΖ: ΗΠ: ΗΠ:: ΦΖ::

6. *Verbs doubly imperfect.*

(a) Beginning with an **ଖ**: and having an Absorbed Guttural at the end. There are but few (**ଖ୍ପ**: and **ଖ୍ଳ**: not being included): **ଖ୍ତ**: **ଖ୍ମ୍ବ**: **ଖ୍ଲ୍ଲ**:

- I. እጥ: *negat.* "to want."
- II. ታጥ: *neg. pass.* "to be wanted."
- III. እጣጥ: *caus.* "to deprive."

(b) *Beginning with P: which absorbs a Guttural.*

- I. **ΦΗ**: Eth. **ΧΩ**:: *act.* "to seize."
- II. **ΧΦΗ**: *trs.* "caused another to seize."
- III. **ΤΦΗ**: *pass.* "was seized."
- IV. **ΧΙΦΗ**: *caus.* "caused to seize," "betrayed."
- V. **ΤΡΦΗ**: *pass. frequentat. & recipr.* "was frequently or alternately seized," "seized frequently," "completely," or "reciprocally."

(c) *Various forms of the Verb ζητεῖν: "To say."*

Not to be confounded with the Auxiliary ήν: "To be." Its forms are partly derived from ήν:, partly from ηύλ: Eth.

- I. እሳ: “he said.”
- II. እበሳ: “to deceive by talking.”
- III. ተባሳ: “to be said,” “called.”
- IV. ተበሳ: “to be deceived.”
- V. ተባሳ: “to rumour in public.”
- VI. ተባባል: } recipr. “to say to each other.”
- VII. ተባባል: } recipr. “to say to each other.”
- VIII. እባባል: “he persuaded.”
- IX. ተባል: “he was talked into any thing,” “was persuaded.”
- X. እታባል: “he persuaded,” “cheated by talking.”

(d) Conjugation of the Verb ΤΘ:: and ουθ::

VII. VARIOUS CONJUGATIONS OF QUADRILITERAL AND PLURILITERAL VERBS.

1. Reduplicated and Transposed Bilaterals.

Stems: Λυστασι: "to be green." ΛΦΛΦ: "to bedaub." ΙΦΙΦ: "to shake." Πξηρ: "to cudgel." ΦΠΦΗ: "to excavate." ΦΠΦΩ: "to bruise." (ΗΖΗΖ::)

I. **ΛΑΨΛΩΨ**: *neut.* "it was green," "fresh."
 II. **ἽΛΨΛΩΨ**: *trs.* "he made green," "verdant," "refreshed."

- III. **ΤΔΦΛΦ**: *pass.* "he was bedaubed."
- IV. **ΚΙΨΗΦ**: *act. intens.* "he shook."
- V. **ΤΔΦΛΦ**: *refl.* "bedaubed," "washed himself."
- VI. **ΖΠΛΦΛΦ**: *caus.* "he caused bedaubing."
- VII. **ΖΞΠΩΩΣ**: *act.* "beat," "shook."
- VIII. **ΤΞΦΩΦΩ**: *pass. & neutr.* "trembled."
- IX. **ΖΞΦήΦή**: *act.* "he stirred," "moved."
- X. **ΤΞΦήΦή**: *pass. & neutr.* "was moved," "moved."
- XI. **ΖΠΛΦήΦή**: *trs.* "he moved."*

2. Derivates from Triliterals having one Radical doubled and transposed.

- I. ደለጻዊ: *neut.* “it was blunt.”
- II. አደጻቸዊ: *trs.* “he blunted.”
- III. ተፈጻዊ: *pass.* “was blunted.”
- IV. አነፍዎ፣: *trs.* “he gave success.”
- V. ተነፍዎ፣: *neut.* “he succeeded,” “prospered.”
- VI. ስንጋጌ፡: *neutr.* “it became knotty.”

But few verbs belong to this class.

3. Geminants.

We rank under this class only such forms as cannot, with our present knowledge of the language, be considered to belong to Form XVI. of the regular Trilateral Verb. This class is but small:

I. ἦ-πλλ: *intrans.* "he fled," "escaped."
 II. ἐξαντίθ: *pass.* "was destroyed."

* The Verbs of this class are very numerous. The following do belong to them:

- iii. **ጥንማል:** *neutr.* "walked nimbly," "affectedly," "proudly."
- iv. **እስጠናዊ:** *trs.* "he warned," "cautioned."
- v. **እንዝባል:** *act.* "he rolled about."
- vi. **ጥንዝባል:** *pass.* "was rolled about."

4. *Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals.*

- i. **መስጥና:** *neutr.* "was glorious."
- ii. **እመስጥና:** *trs.* "he glorified."
- iii. **ጥመስጥና:** *pass.* "he was glorified."
- iv. **እሰፍበት:** *intens.* "he dismissed."
- v. **ጥሰፍበት:** *pass.* "he was dismissed," "took his leave."
- vi. **እሰመስጥና:** *caus.* "he caused to glorify."
- vii. **ገለግበዕ:** *intens.* "he overthrew completely."
- viii. **ጥገለግበዕ:** *pass. intens.* "he was completely overthrown."
- ix. **ጥሰፍባዕ:** *recipr. & reiter.* "took leave from each other." *

SECTION III.

On the Flexion of Verbs.

The Flexion of Verbs treats on their *Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.*

1. *Moods of the Amharic Verb.*

The Amharic Verb has Seven Moods: (a) the *Indicative*; (b) the *Contingent*; (c) the *Subjunctive*; (d) the *Constructive*; (e) the *Imperative*; (f) the *Infinitive*; (g) the *Participle*.

* 1. This class is most numerous, and comprises a great variety of Verbs, as the following List will show: **መረከብ:** **መስከራ:** **መስከው:** **መንከብ:** **መንከሱ:** **ሰበቀል:** **ሰነከል:** **ሰነከራ:** **ሰነገል:** **ሰነመዋ:** **ሰነከራ:** **ሰነገል:** **ቁለበት:** **ቁለወጣ:** **ቁለወፈ:** **ቁመወል:** **ቁ-ሪመወ:** **ቁጠራ:** **በረከተ:** **ተረጋጭ:** **ተኞች:** **እመለከ:** **እነከብ:** **እነመሳ:** **ወነድ:** (**ወንገል:**) **እነበል:** **እነገራ:** **ደንቀረ:** **ደንገዘ:** **ደንገወ:** **ተ-ለመስ:** **ተ-ኩ-ል:** **ተ-ኩ-ብ:** **ተ-ኩ-ድ:** **ተ-ኩ-ፏ:** **ተ-ኩ-ፏ:** **ደ-ኩ-ፏ:** **ደ-ኩ-ፏ:**

2. Most of the forms comprised in this List are Derivative; either from Nouns, as **መስከራ:** **መንከብ:** **ቁ-ኩ-ፏ:** **ቁ-ኩ-ፏ:** **በረከተ:** or, as most of the rest, from Trilateral Verbs. The use of the liquid እ: in this amplification of forms, is remarkable; e.g. **እነጠብ:** is from the Arabic **عَطَس**, **ሰነበት:** from the Hebrew **תַבְשָׁ**, **ሰነመዋ:** from the Eth. **ሰመዋ:** **ሰነከራ:** from the Eth. **ሰከራ:** &c.

A. The *Indicative* Mood has nothing particular. It has two Tenses, the Preterite and the Present (or Future); besides which, other Tenses are formed by the Contingent and the Constructive, in connexion with Auxiliaries.

B. The *Contingent* is the simple verbal form with the Personal Preformatives and Terminations, and serves for the Indicative as well as for the Subjunctive, according as it is either, (1) Simple; or (2) has Conjunctions prefixed, and what the nature of those Conjunctions is; or (3) whether any, and what sort of Auxiliary, is attached to it. (See pp. 66, 67.)

C. The *Conjunctive* or *Subjunctive* Mood is not used in the Amharic, except for the purpose of expressing a desire, or request, or obligation. Its peculiarity consists in its Radicals, after the prefixion of the Personal Serviles, assuming the form of the Imperative. (See pp. 68, 69.)

D. A curious Mood, and peculiar to the Amharic and Tigrê languages, having its beginning undeveloped in the Ethiopic Infinitive, is the *Constructive*. It is formed by the simple root of the verb with Personal Affirmatives; and has four forms; one simple, one augmented, and two compound forms. (See pp. 70, 71.)

E. The form of the *Imperative* (its nature being the same as in other languages) is short. (See p. 71.)

F. The *Infinitive*, or Verbal Substantive, is formed by the prefixion of **በ**: to the Simple Form.

G. The *Participle* presents five; viz. three Simple, and two Compound Forms. The three former, partaking of a nominal character, have been exhibited in the Table of Derivative Nouns: the two latter are formed by the Finite Verb Preterite and Contingent, to which certain Preformatives are prefixed; and they retain their flexibility, i.e. capability of being conjugated. Besides this, they are all declinable. (See pp. 72, 73.)

We come now to speak,

II. *Of the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.*

They are not so exactly distinguished in the Amharic as in our European Languages: in fact, the Abyssinians have not, strictly speaking, more than two divisions of time; i.e. the *Past* and the *Present*; the *Present* being used also for the *Future*. The *Past* is subdivided into the *Perfect*, and *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*; the *Perfect* being rendered by the simple Preterite form, and the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*, (which are not distinguished from each other) being composed either of the Contingent or the Simple Constructive, with the Preterite Auxiliary **በ****ለ****ረ**:: The *Present*, which might be, perhaps with propriety, called *Aorist*, because it is appli-

cable to the Future as well as to the Present Tense, is a form composed of the Contingent and the Auxiliary **חָנָה**: In order to distinguish the Future from the Present, where the context is not in itself clear enough, certain phrases are adopted which leave no doubt that the time is yet to come in which the action &c. of the subject is to take place. But more of this afterwards. (See p. 66.)

3. The Number of Conjugation is but twofold, Singular and Plural.

4. *The Persons.*

There are, in reality, not more than *three* for each Number; viz. the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person spoken of; but the grammatical forms are more, as has been shown under the article of Pronouns, Chap. III.; namely, seven forms for the Singular, and three for the Plural. Now the Semitic Languages have this in common, that the personal distinctions in the Conjugations of Verbs are expressed by certain letters affixed or prefixed, or both, to the Radicals of the Verb; and in so doing, the act of Conjugation is accomplished. We call the prefixed letters *Preformatives*, and the affixed ones *Afformatives*. The following List exhibits them.

(a) *Preformatives.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. גַ—:	3. גַ—:
... ... fem. תַ—:	
2d ... m. & f. תְ—:	2. תְ—:
... ... hon. 1. גְ—:	
... ... 2. תְ—:	
1st ... com. חַ—:	1. חַתְ—:

(b) *Afformatives.*

SINGULAR.	FLURAL.
Pret. Pres. Subj. Constr.	Com. Pret. Pres. Subj. Constr.
3. masc. none. none. —o.	3. — ^א u, — ^א u, — ^א u, — ^א o:
.. fem. — ^א t: — ^א a.	
2. masc. — ^א u: — ^א u: — ^א u:	2. — ^א תְu: — ^א u, — ^א u, — ^א תְu:
.. fem. — ^א i: .. i — ^א i: — ^א i:	
.. hon. 1. — ^א u .. ^א u — ^א o: — ^א o:	
... ... 2. — ^א תְu: ... ^א u — ^א תְu: — ^א תְu:	
1. com. — ^א u: — ^א e. 1. — ^א i: none — ^א תְu:	

What hitherto has been said, may suffice for the preliminaries: we therefore now proceed to the *Conjugation of the Verbs.*

SECTION IV.

Conjugation of Verbs.

Before we enter upon the conjugation of the *Regular Verb*, we give the conjugation of the two *Auxiliary Verbs*:

እል: he is. **እበደ:** he was;

and of the Irregular and Defective Verb Substantive, **እብ:** "he is."

A. **እል:** Eth. **ՍԱՓՈ:** contr. **ՍԱՐ:** "he is," "there is" (French, *il y a*), is used only in the Present; but that has a Preterite form.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Common.	Common.
3d pers. እል: he is.	እልቻ: she is.		እሉ: {they are, he (hon.) is.
2d .. እልሁ:	እልሽ: thou art.		እልቻሁ: you are.
... . . hon. 1.		እል: {you	
... . . 2.		እልቻሁ: } are.	
1st		እልሁ: I am.	እልች: we are.

Note 1. — This verb is not to be confounded with the Irregular Verb **እል:** "he said"; which will be given, when we treat of the Irregular Verbs in general.

2. The 3d pers. sing. and plur., combined with Suffixed Pronouns, have the same signification as "*est*" and "*sunt*" in the Latin, with the Dative of the Personal Pronoun; e.g. *Mihi est*, "I have." So in the Amharic,

ብር: **እልች:** I have (possess) money.

ልጅቻ: **እልቻ:** he has (possesses) children.

3. As Auxiliary, the 3d pers. sing. masc. is changed into **እል:** e.g.

ይልል: for **ይል:** **እል:** he says.

ተዋጋጥዋል: for **ተዋጋጥ:** **እል:** he is sitting.

B. **እበደ:** "he was," is used as Auxiliary for the Past Tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive. It has only the Preterite.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Common.
3. እበደ: { he (እበደ:) { was.	እበደቻ: { she was.		እበደ: they were.
2. እበደሁ:	እበደሽ: { thou wast.		እበደቻሁ: { you
... hon. 1.		እበደ: you were.	were.
... . . 2.		እበደቻሁ: { you were.	
1.	እበደሁ: I was.		እበደች: we were.

Note.—When used as an Auxiliary, **ንበር**: serves often for any person Singular or Plural; e.g.

ተዋወጠው: **ንበር**: they were sitting.

ጥመት: **ንበር**: thou wouldest come.

C. **ነዕ**: *He is.*

This verb is singularly anomalous. It consists of merely one radical letter **ነ**:, to which the Verbal Suffixes are attached, instead of Personal Affirmatives. Is used only in one form, which we may call the Preterite of the Indicative, because it resembles that more than any other form.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Common.
3d pers. ነዕ : he is.	ቻቻ : she is.		ቻቻዎ : they are
2d pers. ኔ : thou art.	ቻ : thou art.		ቻቻ : you are
... ... hon. 1.	ቻቻ :	ነዕ : } you are.	
... ... 2.			
1st pers.	ቻቻ : I am.		ቻ : we are.

This is the regular form of this anomalous verb. Deviations are these: **ነዋ**:, for the 3d pers. sing. masc. interrogative, "Is he?" In the Shoa Dialect, **ነዕያ**: for the regular **ነዕ**?: e.g.

አንድታ: **ነዋ**: How is it? for **አንድታ**: **ነዕ**:

A second deviation is **ቻቻ**: in the Shoa Dialect, "She is," for **ቻቻ**:

1. Conjugation of the Perfect and Trilateral Verbs.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple form **ነበረ**: neut. "He was honourable." **ሙለስ**: act. "he turned." intrs. "he answered." **ባግብ**: trs. "he scolded," "blasphemed."

(a) *Indicative Mood.*

a. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Com.
3d pers. ነበረ : { he was ho- nourable.	ነበረቻ : { she was ho- nourable.	
2d ... ነበሩ :	ነበሩ : { thou wast ho- nourable.	
... hon. 1.	ነበረ : } you were	
... ... 2.	ነበረቻ : } honourable.	
1.	ነበሩ : I was honourable.	

Common.

PLURAL.

3d pers. **ነበረ**: they were honourable.

2d ... **ነበረቻ**: you were honourable.

1st ... **ነበሩ**: we were honourable.

β. PRESENT AND FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Common.
3d p. չի՛՛՛՛ :	{ he is, will be Դի՛՛՛՛ :	{ she is, will be hon.
2. Դի՛՛՛ :	Դի՛՛՛՛ :	{ thou art, wilt be hon.
... hon. 1. . . . .	. . . . .	ցի՛՛՛ : { you are, or will
... 2. . . . .	. . . . .	Դի՛՛՛՛ : { be hon.
1. . . . .	. . . . .	Անի՛՛՛ : { I am, shall be hon.

PLURAL.

Common.

3d pers. **ցի՛՛՛՛**: they are, will be honourable.2d .. **Դի՛՛՛՛**: you are, will be honourable.1st .. **Անի՛՛՛**: we are, shall be honourable.

NOTE 1.—Whether this form, when it occurs, is intended for the Present or for the Future Tense, generally depends on the context. In order, however, to leave no doubt when they speak of future things, they use the simple contingent form with additional particles; e.g. **Անու՛**: **Կ՞զ՞**: **ՀԱ՞՛**: “I have (am) to be honourable.” **Անու՛**: **Կ՞զ՞**: **ԴԱ՞՛**: “time is for me (to come) that I am to be honourable,” &c.

2. Personal Suffixes, and sometimes the Conjunction **յու**, are infixes between the Simple Form and the Auxiliary.

(b.) CONTINGENT.

α. Simple.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Common.
3d pers. ցի՛՛ :	Դի՛՛ :	
2d .. Դի՛՛ :	Դի՛՛ :	
... hon. 1. . . . .	. . . . .	ցի՛՛ :
... 2. . . . .	. . . . .	Դի՛՛ :
1st pers. . . . .	. . . . .	Անու՛ :

PLURAL.

Common.

ցի՛՛՛:**Դի՛՛՛**:**Անու՛**:

As this form is used for both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, as well as for the formation of Participles, we have given no translation of it; but shall present a few instances here, to illustrate its use:

ይት-በር: **ዚያ:** in order that he may be honourable.

ለት-በር: that he may be honourable.

ሻጋይ-ት-በር: that he is honourable.

በት-በር: or **ይት-በር:** **ሻጋይሁን:** if he is (be) honourable.

ከት-በር: than that he should be honourable.

በት-በር: while he is honourable.

ሙቀት-በር: he that is honourable.

አይት-በርም: he is not honourable.

The Present and Future of the Indicative, also, is a composition of the Contingent with the Auxiliary **እል:** which is omitted whenever the word receives any augmentation at the beginning or at the end, except Suffixes or Copulative Conjunctions.

β. COMPOUND.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Common.
3d p. ይት-በር: ነበር: { he was, had been	ተት-በር: ነበሩት: { she was, had been hon.	
2. ተት-በር: ነበሩ:	ተት-በር: ነበሩት: { thou wast, hadst been hon.	
... hon. 1.		ይት-በር: ነበሩ: { you were, had been
... 2.		ተት-በር: ነበሩት- ኩሁ: { hon.
1.		አት-በር: ነበሩ: { I was, had been hon.
		PLURAL.
		Common.
3d pers. ይት-በር: ነበሩ: they were, or had been honourable.		
2d ... ተት-በር- ኩሁ: ነበሩ- ኩሁ: you were, or had been honourable.		
1st ... አዝተ-በር: ነበሩን: we were, or had been honourable.		

This form is used for the Subjunctive, as well as for the Indicative.

(c) *Subjunctive Mood.*

Is characterized by having the form of the Imperative Mood with the Personal Preformatives.

		SINGULAR.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.
3d pers.	ያກበር: { let him be hon.	ተገበር: { let her be hon.	
2. ..	ተገበር:	ተገበર: { mayest thou be hon.	
..	hon. 1.		ያገበሩ: { may you
.. ..	2.		ተገበሩ: { be hon.
1. ..	. . . . .		እገበር: { let me, may I be hon.

3d pers. **የችሁ**: may they, let them be honourable.

2. .. ተክበር: may you be honourable.

1. ... እንተብር: may we, let us be honourable.

NOTE 1.—As the Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, always expressing a wish, a request, or indirect command, it is natural that the Second Person Singular, in its direct form, and the same person in the Plural, is less frequently used than the remaining forms; for they use more generally the Imperative.

2. Several verbs are destitute of this form, and they use the Simple Contingent. It may therefore be of service to the Student, to give a list of those verbs of this class which have this form; and another of those which have not.

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

VERBS WITHOUT IT

Λσυά: Λσυδ: Λπή: .
 Λφιμ: Λφί: Λφω: .
 Ληπ: Λτ-ις: ιιληπ:
 ιιιζφ: ιιιχ: φηιιξ:
 ιιιηι: ιιιγι: ιιιηι:
 ιιιη-τ: ιιιγ: ιιιδ:
 ιιιφι: ιιιιι: ιιιιι:
 ιιιη: ιιιφι: ιιιτ-ι:
 ιιιιι: Φιιιι: Φιιιι:
 Φ-ιιι: ΦΦι: Φξι:
 Φ-ιιι: Πιιι: Πιιι:
 Πιιι-ι: Πιιι: Πιιι:

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

3. In verbs whose first radical has a diphthong, the latter is shortened into that diphthong which answers the sixth vowel order; e.g. **ἘΦΕΚΤ**: "let him cut," from **ΦΕΚΤΟΣ**; **ἌΤΓΡΩ**: "do not be deficient."

4. The Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, that it yields all its forms to serve the latter, where that is deficient. So in the negative orders, prohibitions or warnings, where the Imperative cannot be used for having no Servile Preformatives; *e. g.*

አጥቃለሁ: do not tell.

ἌΓΩΝΑΦΕ: do not fall.

አጥገኝ: do not kill.

ΔΤΦΥΣΤ: do not cut.

(d) *Constructive Mood.*

This is a singular Mood, which has nothing corresponding, either in our European or in the other Semitic Languages; although its form, as

far as the Simple one is concerned, answers the Ethiopic Infinitives ተበር፡ and ተበር፡; but this Mood is not an Infinitive. It has nothing of a Substantive character; whereas the Infinitive is the first Verbal Substantive, possessing both the characters of Substantive and Verb. Nor is there any other Mood to which it exactly corresponds: neither Participle nor Gerund, nor Finite Verb, will answer it; although it may be occasionally translated by either, and sometimes by an Adverb. It occupies an intermediate station between the Infinitive and the Finite Verb; has four forms, one of which is Simple, one Augmented, and two Compound; and is flexible, like the Finite Verb, having Affirmatives resembling the Suffixed Pronouns, partly of the Noun, and partly of the Verb. The Simple form is used for amplifying; the other forms, on account of the auxiliaries which are attached to them, for constituting sentences. When the nature of this Mood is understood, we hope the designation *Constructive* will be justified; not having been able to fix upon any better.

The Simple form ተበር፡ (a modification of the radix ተበር፡ “honour”), which may be considered as containing the idea of an agent, and of an action, or a concrete being, and an abstract state or condition, &c., assumes peculiar forms of Pronouns; which must not be taken as Possessive (Nominal), but as Personal (Verbal); nor as the other Verbal Suffixes which are in the Accusative; but they are Nominatives. Here it is:

a. FIRST FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

Simple Form.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com	Com.
3d p. ተበር፡ { he being hon.	ከተበር፡ she being honourable.		ከተበርዎ፡ they
2. ተበረህ፡	ከተበረህ፡ thou being honourable		ከተበረኩ፡ you
.. hon. 1.		ከተበረዎ፡ { you be-	
... . . 2.		ከተበረኩ፡ { ing hon.	
1.		ከተበር፡ I being hon.	ከተበረኩ፡ we } being honourable

The Augmented form has become Finite by the Auxiliary እና፡ being attached to the Simple form; but not in the same manner as it attaches itself to the Contingent, in constituting the Present and Future Tense. It serves for the Past and the Present Tenses.

B. SECOND OR AUGMENTED FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.*Constructive Aorist (Present and Perfect).*

Masc.	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Fem.	Com.	Com.	Com.	Com.
3. ክ-በረቃል፡ { he is (was) hon. }	ነ-በረለች፡ she is (was) hon.			ነ-በረቃል፡ they	
2. ክ-በረሱል፡ ክ-በረሱል፡ thou art (wast) hon.				ነ-በረለችናል፡ you	
.. hon. 1.	• ክ-በረቃል፡ { you were hon. }				
.. 2.	• ክ-በረለችናል፡ { hon. }				
1.	{ ክ-በረቃለሁ፡ for ክ-በረ፡ እሉሁ፡ I am (was) h.			ነ-በረቃል፡ we	

γ. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTIVE FORMS.*N Constructive Perfect.*

Masc.	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Fem.	Common.	Common.	Common.	Common.
3. { ክ-በረ፡ { he was, or had been hon. }	ነ-በረ፡ { she was, or had been hon. }				
2. { ክ-በረሁ፡ { thou wast, hadst been hon. }	ነ-በረሁ፡ { thou wast, hadst been hon. }				
.. hon. 1.	• ክ-በረው፡ ንበሩ፡ { you were, had been hon. }				
.. 2.	• ክ-በረለችሁ፡ ንበሩ፡ { hon. }				
1.	• ክ-በረ፡ ንበሩ፡ I was, had been h.				

3d pers. ክ-በረዎ፡ ንበሩ፡ they
 2d .. ክ-በረለችሁ፡ ንበሩ፡ you } were, or had been honourable.
 1st .. ክ-በረኑ፡ ንበሩ፡ we

This form is used merely for the Indicative. Observe, also, that ንበሩ፡ may be used throughout, without any change, as remarked in the Note to the conjugation of ንበሩ፡ p. 65.

B. Constructive Form of Uncertainty.

SINGULAR.

3d masc. ՚ԻՌԸ: ԶՄՖՃ:	he may	}	
.. fem. ՚ԻՌԾ: ՚ՏՄՖՃՒ:	she may		
2d masc. ՚ԻՌՃՅ: ՚ՏՄՖՃՅ:	} thou mayest	probably be honourable.	
.. fem. ՚ԻՌՃՅԻ: ՚ՏՄՖՃՅԻ:			
.. hon. 1. ՚ԻՌՃՓ: ԶՄՖՃ:	} you may		
.. 2. ՚ԻՌՃՒՅ: ՚ՏՄՖՃՒՅ:			
1st com. ՚ԻՌՃ: ՚ՆՄՖՃԱՅ:	I may		

PLURAL.

3d masc. ՚ԻՌՃՓ: ԶՄՖՃ:	they	}
2d .. ՚ԻՌՃՒՅ: ՚ՏՄՖՃՒՅ:	you	
1st com. ՚ԻՌՃՅ: ՚ՆՅՄՖՃԱՅ:	we	

(e) *Imperative.*

The Imperative has two forms; one which has the first Radical in the sixth, and the second in the first order; and another which has the first Radical in the first, and the second in the sixth order. All those verbs which have the Subjunctive form, have the Imperative in the first; and the rest have it in the second form. As a specimen of the first, we take the Imperative of **՚ԻՌՃ:**; and of the other, that of **ԹՊՓ::**. It is used only in the Second Person Singular and Plural.

a. *Form ԿՍՎ::*

SINGULAR.

Masc. ՚ԻՌՃ: } be honourable.	|	Com. ՚ԻՌՃ: be honourable.
-------------------------------------	--	----------------------------------

Fem. ՚ԻՌՃ: }	
---------------------	--

Diphthong form: **Փ-ԹԸ:** **Փ-ԹՃ:** sing. **Փ-ԹՃ:** pl. "count."

β. *Form ՍՎՎ::*

SINGULAR.

Masc. ԹՊՓ: } do thou observe.	|	Com. ԹՊՓ: do you observe.
--------------------------------------	--	----------------------------------

Fem. ԹՊՓ: }	
--------------------	--

PLURAL.

(f) *Infinitive Mood.*
Is formed by prefixing **ՄՎ:** to the Simple root; and it presents the two forms: **ՄՎ՚ԻՌՃ:** "to be honourable;" and **ՄՎԹՊՓ:** "to observe." With Prima Rad. Diphthong: **ՄՎՓ-ԹԸ::** "to number." **ՄՎՓ-ՃԸ:** "to till," "dig."

(g) *Participles.*

a. Simple: act. **՚ԻՌՃ:** one who is honoured.

pass. **ԹՄԳՓ:** any thing dipped.

Eth. pass. **՚ԻՌՃ:** honoured.

β. Compound Part., Adjective, or Relative Participle.

N *For the Preterite*—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **Պ:** to the Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3. masc. ԲԻՈՒՇ: he } who was .. fem. ԲԻՈՒՇՔ: she } hon.	3. ԲԻՈՒՇ: they who were hon.
2. masc. ԲԻՈՒԾՅ: } thou who .. fem. ԲԻՈՒԾՈՒ: } wast hon.	2. ԲԻՈՒԾՔՄ: you who were hon.
.. hon. 1. ԲԻՈՒՇ: } you who 2. ԲԻՈՒԾՔՄ: } were hon.	
1. com. ԲԻՈՒԾՅ: I who was hon.	1. ԲԻՈՒԾՅ: we who were hon.

γ *For the Present*—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **ԲԳՅ:** to the forms of the Contingent Mood.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3. masc. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: he } who is .. fem. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: she } hon.	3. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: they who are hon.
2. masc. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: } thou who .. fem. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: } art hon.	2. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: you who are hon.
.. hon. 1. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: } you who 2. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: } are hon.	
1. com. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: I who am hon.	1. ԲՏԳԻՌՈՎ: we who are hon.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Simple Participial forms are used in their verbal as well as in a nominal character. This is evident in Active Verbs; e.g. **ԹՂՓ:** “observing,” “watching,” “guarding”; and “guardian,” “observer”; which may have its object connected with it either in the Genitive Case, when it is considered as a Noun, e.g. **ՐՈԴ:** **ԹՂՓ:** “a keeper, guardian, of sheep,” “shepherd”; or in the Accusative Case, **ՈՒՅ:** **ԹՂՓ:** “one keeping, watching the sheep.” The Passive forms are resolvable by the two compound forms (**N**) and (**γ**) of the Passive Conjugations.

2. The two compound forms of the Relative or Adjective Participle evince their Participial character (which consists in partaking—*participiendo*—of the properties of the Verb as well as of the Noun, and forming a connecting link between both) by the position in which they stand when connected with Nouns, as Adjectives; by the treatment they experience from other Transitive Verbs, when being put into the Accusative Case; and by the influence they themselves exercise on Nouns and Pronouns. As this subject, however, belongs more properly to the Syntax, we shall leave it for the present.

Before we leave this subject, we beg to present to the Student those regular deviations which take place in those verbs whose third radical letter is liable to change, by the accession of the vowels *i* and *ê*, according to the rule laid down Part I. Ch. VII. c. This occurs in verbs ending in **A**: **W**: **ñ**: **T**: **I**: **H**: **G**: **M**: **X**: and **Θ**:, with (1) the Feminine of the 2d pers. masc. in (a) the Present Indicative; (b) the Contingent Simple and Compound; (c) Subjunctive; (d) Imperative; (2) with the 1st pers. sing. in the Constructive Simple and its Compounds. Instances:

1. **ετό:** "He span."

FOR

ተፈተያለሽ: thou (fem.) spinnest . . .	ተፈተያለሽ::
ተፈተቂ:	ተፈተል::
ተፈተቂ: ከበርሽ: thou (f.) wast spinning,	ተፈተል: ከበርሽ:
ተፈተቂ: ተሆኅለሽ: thou (f.) wilt be spinning,	ተፈተል: ተሆኅ: እለሽ::
ይተቂ: do thou (f.) spin	ይተል::
ተይተቂ: thou (f.) shalt, mayest thou spin,	ተይተል::
ፈተቂ: I spinning	ፈተል::
ፈተያለሁ: I spin, span	ፈተል: እለሁ::
ፈተቂ: ከበርሁ: I was spinning . . .	ፈተል: ከበርሁ::
ፈተቂ: እሆኅለሁ: {I shall (may pro-} {bably) be spinning}	ፈተል: እሆኅለሁ::

2. **מלך**: "He was king" (queen).

ሙለስ: "He returned." (*act.*)

ተኞችለሽ፡ thou art queen	ተኞች፡ እለሽ፡
ተኞሽ፡	ተኞች፡
ተመስለሽ፡ ዘዴሽ፡ thou was returning,	ተመስለሽ፡ ዘዴሽ፡
ተዋጋለሽ፡ ተሆናለሽ፡ { thou wilt be returning }	ተመስለሽ፡ ተሆናለሽ፡
ተንግሳሽ፡ mayest thou reign as Queen .	ተንግሳሽ፡
ንግሻ፡ be queen	ንግሻ፡
መስለሽ፡	መስለሽ፡
መልከትሁ፡ & መልከያሁ፡ መልከ፡ }	{ መልከያሁ፡ መልከ፡ ዘዴ
ዘዴሁ፡ መልከ፡ አሆናለሁ፡ }	{ ሁ፡ መልከ፡ አሆናለሁ፡

3. 'נָאַת: "He opened."

ትክናታለሽ: thou openest **ትክናታያለሽ**:
ትክናቸ: **ትክናት**:

FOR

ትክፍች፡ ካበሽ፡	thou wast opening	ትክፍታ፡ ካበሽ፡
ትክፍች፡ ተሆኝለሽ፡	{ thou wilt be opening }	ትክፍታ፡ ተሆኝለሽ፡
ትክፈች፡	mayest thou open	ትክፈታ፡
ከፈች፡	do thou open	ከፈታ፡
ከፍች፡	I opening	ከፍታ፡
ከፍችለሁ፡	I open	ከፍተዋለሁ፡
ከፍታ፡ ካበሱ፡ & ከፍች፡ እሆኝለሁ፡	&	ከፍታ፡ እሆኝለሁ፡ & ከፍች፡
		ካበሱ፡

4. **ለሙኑ፡** "He begged."

ተለምችለሽ፡	thou beggest	ተለምችዋለሽ፡
ተለምች፡ &c.	. . . . .	ተለምኑ፡
ለምች፡	do thou beg	ለምኑ፡
ለምች፡	I begging	ለምኑ፡
ለምችለሁ፡	I am (was) begging	ለምችዋለሁ፡

5. **መረዝ፡** "He poisoned."

ተመርዝሬለሽ፡	thou poisonest	ተመርዝሬዋለሽ፡
ተመርዝ፡ &c.	. . . . .	ተመርዝ፡
መረዝ፡	and መረዝ፡ do thou poison,	መረዝ፡
መረዝ፡	I poisoning	መረዝ፡
መረዝሬለሁ፡	I poison (poisoned)	መረዝሬዋለሁ፡

6. **ወረዳ፡** "He descended."

ተወረደለሽ፡	thou descendest	ተወረደዋለሽ፡
ተወረደ፡ &c.	. . . . .	ተወረደ፡
ተወረደ፡	mayest thou descend	ተወረደ፡
ወረዳ፡	do thou descend	ወረዳ፡
ወረዳ፡ &c., I descending	. . . . .	ወረዳ፡
ወረዳለሁ፡	I was, am descending	ወረዳዋለሁ፡

7. **ወገበ፡** "he pounded."

ተወገበለሽ፡	thou poundest	ተወገበዋለሽ፡
ተወገበ፡ &c.	. . . . .	ተወገበ፡
ተወገበ፡	mayest thou pound	ተወገበ፡
ወገበ፡	do thou pound	ወገበ፡

Φημενός: I pounding &c. **Φημών:**

Φημέλαντος: I am (was) pounding . . . **Φημέλαντος::**

8. **Τιμέων:** "he reproved," "chastised." **Ωτέων:** "he proceeded." The changes are the same as in No. 7.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

whose characteristic is a prolongation of the first radical, by which it is changed from the first into the fourth form. Its force is intensity of the idea of the original form.

τίξον: he scolded exceedingly.

Its difference in form, from the First Conjugation, is as follows:

1. It retains the first long radical throughout; on this account, it
2. Has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive, but is served by the Contingent Mood.
3. In the Imperative, the first radical is long, of the fourth: the second short, of the sixth order.
4. In the Infinitive, the first radical is of the fourth; the second, as in all the conjugations, of the first order.

The mode of conjugating being the same as in the first species, we shall give only the Third Person, Singular and Plural, in those Moods and Tenses which have it.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers.

SINGULAR.

3d pers.

PLURAL.

τίξον: he scolded exceedingly &c. | **τίξοντας:** they scolded exceedingly &c.

Present and Future.

τίξοντας: { he scolds exceedingly &c.	|	τίξοντας: { they scold exceedingly &c.
--	--	---

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

τίξοντας:

| **τίξοντας:**

Compound Preterite.

τίξοντας ήτοντας: { he scolded, had scolded, was cold-	|	τίξοντας ήτοντας:: he scolded, &c.
{ ing, would scold, would have scold-		
ed exceedingly.		

Compound of Uncertainty.

τίξοντας ήττας: { he may (perhaps) scold exceedingly &c.	|	τίξοντας ήττας::
--	--	-------------------------

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ጥድር: he, scolding exceedingly &c. | **ጥድՌՈՒ:** they scolding &c.

Augmented Present and Perfect (Aorist).

ጥՁՌՈՎԸ: { he scolds (scolded) | **ጥՁՌՈՎԸ:** they scold, &c.
 exceedingly, &c. |

Comp. Preterite.

ጥՁՌ: ՆՈՀ: { he scolded, was cold- | **ጥՁՌՈՎ: ՆՈՀ:** they scolded, &c.
 ing exceedingly, &c. |

Comp. of Uncertainty.

ጥՁՌ: ՔՄԴԸ: he may (perhaps) scold exceedingly, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ጥՁՌՈ:** } do thou scold. | **ጥՁՌ:** { do you scold exceedingly,
Fem. **ጥՁՌՈ:** } &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ՄԱՐԴՈՒ: to scold, the scolding.

7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominascens*.—**ጥՁՌՈ:** “a scolder,” “one who scolds exceedingly.”

2. *Adject.*.—**ԲՅԴ ՌՁՌՈ:** &c. “one who scolds exceedingly,” &c.

Of course, there is no Passive Participle of this form.

c. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active and Transitive Voice.—The characteristic is an **Հ**: prefixed to the radix; which puts the Personal Preformatives, excepting **Հ**:, into the fourth order.

Form ՀԻՌՈՀ: “he honoured.”

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ՀԻՌՈՀ: he honoured, &c. as **ԻՌՈՀ:** | **ՀԻՌՈՀՆ:** they honoured, &c.

Present and Future.

ՔԻՌՈՀԸ: he honours. | **ՔԻՌՈՀԸՐ:** they honour, &c.

ՔԻՌՈՀԸՐԾ: she honours, &c. |

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

ՔԻՌՈՀԸ: **ՔԻՌՈՀԸ:** &c. &c. | **ՔԻՌՈՀՆ:** &c.

SINGULAR.	Compound Preterite.	PLURAL.
ያኩብር: ኋስረ: &c.	| የኩብር: ንብረ: &c.	
<i>Compound of Uncertainty.</i>		
3. SUBJUNCTIVE.		
ያኩበር: may he (let him) honour, &c. as ያኩበር: &c.		
4. CONSTRUCTIVE. <i>Simple.</i>		
አኩብር: he honouring.	አኩብርዎ: they honouring.	
አኩብር: she honouring.	አኩብርቻ: you honouring.	
አኩብርሁ: } thou honouring.		
አኩብርቻ: } you honouring.		
አኩብር: I honouring.	አኩብርቸ: we honouring.	
<i>Augmented Present and Preterite.</i>		
አኩብርዋል: { he honours (honoured) &c.	አኩብርዋል: { they honour (honoured) &c.	
<i>Compound Preterite.</i>		
አኩብር: ንብረ: he honoured, &c. | አኩብርዎ: ንብረ: they honoured, &c.		
SINGULAR.	5. IMPERATIVE.	PLURAL.
Masc. አኩበር: } do thou honour.		
Fem. አኩበር: } do ye honour.		
6. INFINITIVE.		
ማኩበር: to honour, the honouring.		
7. PARTICIPLES.		
1. <i>Nominal.</i> አኩበር: the honourer, one who honours.		
2. <i>Adject.</i> { የሙያየኩብር: he who honours.		

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.**ተኩበር:** "he was reviled."

Its nature is pre-eminently *Passive* (objective), and reflective. Its characteristic is the Preformative **T**: to the original form in the Preterite, Constructive, and Imperative, which, in the same manner as in the cognate languages, gives way to the other Preformatives in the process of conjugations. The second radical remains unchanged in all the moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive Moods. So does also the first radical in the Infinitive Mood. These two remarks serve to distinguish this and the other Passive Conjugations from the rest.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. ተስኅጻ፡ he was reviled. | ተስኅጻ፡ they were reviled,
&c. &c., the same as ክበሩ፡ &c.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. ደስኅጻ፡ { he is (will be) reviled.	reviled.	3d p. c. ደስኅጻ፡ { (will be) reviled.
.... fem. ተስኅጻለች፡ { she is (will be) reviled.		ተስኅጻለች፡ { you are (will be)
2d per. masc. ተስኅጻሁ፡ } thou art		
.... fem. ተስኅጻለሽ፡ } (wilt be)		
.... hon. 1. ደስኅጻ፡ } you are		
.... 2. ተስኅጻለች፡ } (will be)		
1st ... com. እስኅጻለሁ፡ I am (shall be)		እንስኅጻለች፡ { we are (shall be)

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d per. masc. ደስኅ፡ fem. ተስኅ፡	
2d ተስኅ፡ fem. ተስኅ፡	
.... hon. 1. ደስኅ፡ 2. ተስኅ፡	
1st ... com. እስኅ፡	

ደስኅ፡

ትስኅ፡

እንስኅ፡

Compound Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ደስኅ፡ ክበሩ፡ he was (would be), had been (would have been), reviled,
&c. &c.

PLURAL.

ደስኅ፡ ክበሩ፡ they were (would be), had been (would have been),
reviled, &c. &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. ደስኅ፡ ደሸቃል፡ { he may (per- haps) be re- viled, &c. &c.	ደስኅ፡ ደሸቃል፡ { they may (per- haps) be re- viled, &c. &c.
--	---

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	Simple.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ጥስጋብ: he being reviled.	ጥስጋብዎ: they being	
... fem. ጥስጋብ: she being reviled.	ጥስጋብና: you being	
2d .. masc. ጥስጋብ: thou being re-		
... fem. ጥስጋብና: } viled.		
... hon. 1. ጥስጋብዎ: } you being		
... ... 2. ጥስጋብና: } reviled.		
1st.. com. ጥስጋብ: I being reviled.	ጥስጋብን: we being	

Augmented Aorist.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. m. ጥስጋብዋል: he } is	ጥስጋብዋል: they
... f. ጥስጋብላች: she } (was)	ጥስጋብኩል: you
2d .. m. ጥስጋብዋል: } thou art	
... f. ጥስጋብኩል: } (wast)	
... hon. 1. ጥስጋብዋል: } you are	
... ... 2. ጥስጋብኩል: } (were)	
1st.. com. ጥስጋብዋለሁ: { I am	ጥስጋብዋል: we
	{ (was)

SINGULAR.	Compound Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. m. ጥስጋብ: { he was (had ... ዝበሩ: { been) reviled, &c. &c. &c.	ጥስጋብዎ: } they were (had been) ዝበሩ: } reviled, &c. &c.	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ጥስጋብ: { do thou be (sub-	ጥስጋብ: { do you be (submit to
... mit to being) re-	being) reviled.

መጥስጋብ: to be reviled, the being reviled.

7. PARTICIPLES.

- (a) *Nominal*, **ጥስጋብ:** one who is reviled.
- (b) *Relative*, a. *Perf.* **የጥስጋብ:** he who was (has been) reviled.
b. *Pres.* **ያጥስጋብ:** he who is reviled.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

አፍኑ: He made (caused to) speak.

The nature of this verb is doubly transitive, or *causative*. It combines the characteristics of both the second and the third conjugations; the prolongation of the first radical giving intensity to the transitively (by **አ:**) augmented form.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	አፍኑ: { he made		አፍኑ: they made
... fem.	አፍኑች: { she made		
2d .. masc.	አፍኑሁ: { thou madest	{ to speak.	አፍኑሁ: you made
... fem.	አፍኑቻ: { thou madest		
... hon. 1.	አፍኑ: { you made		
... ... 2.	አፍኑችሁ: { you made		
1st.. com.	አፍኑሁ: I made		አፍኑሁ: we made

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.		PLURAL	
... fem.	ተፍኑለች: { she } (will make)		ተፍኑለሁ: they
2d .. masc.	ተፍኑለሁ: { thou makest	{ to speak.	ተፍኑለሁ: you
... fem.	ተፍኑለለቻ: { (will make)		
... hon. 1.	ተፍኑለሁ: { you make		
... ... 2.	ተፍኑለለችሁ: { (will make)		
1st.. com.	አፍኑለሁ: { I make } (shall make)		አፍኑለለሁ: we

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers.	ያፍኑ: fem. ታፍኑ:	ያፍኑ:
2d ..	ታፍኑ: fem. ታፍኑ:	ታፍኑ:
.. hon. 1.	ያፍኑ: 2. ታፍኑ:	ያፍኑ:
1.	አፍኑ:	

Compound Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d pers. masc.	ያፍኑ፡ ንበት: { he made (would make), had made (would have made) to speak, &c.	ያፍኑ፡ ንበት: { they made &c. to speak &c.	

Compound of Uncertainty.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

የተገለ፡ ይህችል፡ { he may (per-
haps) make to
speak, &c.

PLURAL.

ያተገለ፡ ይህችሉ፡ { they may (per-
haps) make to
speak, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*3d p. masc. **ከተገለ፡** he... fem. **ከተገለ፡** she2d .. masc. **ከተገረሁ፡** { thou... fem. **ከተገረሽ፡** {... hon. 1. **ከተገረዎ፡** { you... ... 2. **ከተገረወሁ፡** { you1st.. com. **ከተገለ፡ I****ከተገረዎ፡** they**ከተገረሱ፡** you**ከተገረወ፡** making
to speak.**ከተገረወ፡** we*Compound Aorist.*

3d pers. masc.

ከተገረዋል፡ { he makes (made) to
speak, &c.

ከተገረዎል፡ { they make (made) to
speak, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ከተገለ፡ ንበ፡ { he made (had
made) to speak, &c.

ከተገረዎ፡ ንበ፡ { they made (had made)
to speak, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ከተገለ፡** do thou make to**ከተገለ፡** do ye make to speak.Fem. **ከተገለ፡** speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማተገለ፡ to make or cause to speak; the causing to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

(a) *Simple*, **ከተገለ፡** one who makes to speak.(b) *Relative*,a. *Perfect*, **የተገለ፡** he who made to speak, &c.β. *Present*, **የወጪ ተገለ፡** he who makes to speak, &c.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

ተገለ፡ "He spoke."

The nature and force of this species is intensity, continuation, sometimes reciprocity, either of the original, or of the Fourth Conjugation. It

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה: he tried.**תְּשֻׁמְפַּת:** he disputed.

No other instances of this conjugation present themselves to us, except these two. The peculiarity of this conjugation, i.e. the change of a radical of the first or of the fourth order into two letters, into the radical of the sixth, with the פ: of the fourth order, is so frequent in Shoa in other instances, that we apprehend the use of this conjugation itself may be of no small extent. Its force differs not from the sixth conjugation, with which it is identical, except in the change of the first radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה: he tried, &c.

PLURAL.

| **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה:** they tried, &c.

Present and Future.

גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה: he tries (will try) &c. | **גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה.א:** they try (will try) &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה: &c.| **גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה:** &c.

Compound Preterite.

גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה: נִסְחָה: he tried, &c. | **גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה:** נִסְחָה: they tried, &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה: { he probably has | **גַּשְׁמֹפְּתָה:** { they probably have
נִסְחָה: { tried, &c. | נִסְחָה: { tried, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה: he trying, &c.| **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה.וּ:** they trying, &c.

Compound Aorist.

תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה.וּ: he tries or tried &c. | **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה.וּ:** { they try or tried,
&c.

Compound Preterite.

תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה.וּ: { he tried, had tried, | **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה.וּ:** { they tried, had
נִסְחָה: { &c. | נִסְחָה: { tried, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה:** } do thou try. | **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה:** do ye try.
Fem. **תְּשֻׁמְפִּחָה:** }

6. INFINITIVE.

וְעַשְׁמֹפְּתָה: to try, the trying, trial.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ተምዋነኛ: one who tries.

Relative (a) Perfect, የተምዋነኛ: he who tried, &c.

(b) *Present*, የመምዋነኛ: he who tries, &c.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

አስተካክል: He caused to honour, caused to be honoured.

This is the most frequent form for the causative voice. Its characteristic is the prefexion of the two letters አስ: to the original form, with which it has nearly the same mode of conjugation. The second radical is, in the Contingent and all other forms derived from it, put into the sixth order. But it has no Subjunctive form. The Imperative has the Contingent form of the radicals. The Infinitive has the first and second radicals in the first order. The Personal Preformatives are put before the አስ: absorbing the እ::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አስተካክል: he caused to be hon. &c.

3d pers.

አስተካክል: { they caused to be
honoured, &c.

PLURAL.

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. የአስተካክል: he causes &c.

... fem. ታስተካክልች: she causes &c.

2d ... masc. ታስተካክልሁ: } thou causest &c.

... fem. ታስተካክልቻለሁ: }

... hon. 1. የአስተካክል: } you cause &c.

... 2. ታስተካክልቻሁ: }

1st.. com. አስተካክልሁ: I cause &c.

የአስተካክልሁ: they

ታስተካክልቻሁ: you

ንድስተካክልቻሁ: we

cause to be honoured

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. የአስተካክል: fem. ታስተካክል:

2d ታስተካክል: fem. ታስተካክል:

... hon. 1. የአስተካክል: 2d ታስተካክል:

1st.. አስተካክል:

PLURAL.

የአስተካክል:

ታስተካክል:

ንድስተካክል:

3d pers. masc.

Compound Preterite.

የአስተካክል: } he caused, &c. to be
ከበሩ: } honoured, &c. | የአስተካክል: } they caused, &c. to be
ከበሩ: } honoured, &c.

Compound of Probability.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
ያስከ-ኋር፡	he (probably) may	ያስከ-ኋር፡	they (probably) may
የሩቃ፡	cause to be hon. &c.	የሩቃ፡	cause to be hon. &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.	<i>Simple.</i>
አስተ-በር: { he causing to be honoured, &c.	አስተ-በረዱ: { they causing to be

Compound Aorist.

እስከ-በርቃድ: { he causes (caused) | **እስከ-ባረዃድ:** { they cause (caused)
to be hon. &c.

Compound Preterite.

እስተ-በር: { he caused (had caused)
ንበር: { to be honoured, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስተካክል፡ do thou cause to | አስተካክሬ፡ do ye cause to be hon.
 Fem. አስተካክለ፡ be honoured.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማግኘትበር: to cause to be honoured, the causing to be honoured, the procuring honour.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, እስተካደ: one who causes to be honoured.

Relative,

(a) *Pret.* **ያስተካበذ**: he who caused &c.
 (b) *Pres.* **ያመች የስተካበበር**: he who causes to be honoured, &c.

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

ନୀମୁଠା: He caused to resemble ; he flattered, dissimulated.

The difference of this conjugation from the preceding is so slight, that we do not find it necessary to give its flexion: it consists merely in the second radical being constantly long, except in the Constructive: in all the rest it is similar to the preceding **አነበበ**: As to the third radical **አ**: we refer to the deviations marked under the First Conjugation, No. 1. This conjugation, by the way, is very rare.

J. TENTH CONJUGATION.

አስተኞች: He made to speak.

The force of this conjugation is Causative, as the two preceding ones. The difference consists in the form being augmented by three letters, **አስተ**: instead of the two **አስ**:

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
አስተኞች :	he made to speak, &c.	አስተኞች :	they made to speak, &c.

Present and Future.

ያስተኞች :	{ he makes &c. to speak, &c.	ያስተኞች :	{ they make &c. to speak, &c.
----------------	---------------------------------	----------------	----------------------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

ያስተኞች :	&c.	ያስተኞች :	&c.
----------------	-----	----------------	-----

Compound Preterite.

ያስተኞች፡ ንበት :	{ he made &c. to speak, &c.	ያስተኞች፡ ንበት :	{ they made &c. to speak, &c.
---------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------	----------------------------------

Compound of Probability.

ያስተኞች፡ ይህን :	{ he may probably make to speak, &c.	ያስተኞች፡ ይህን :	{ they may probably cause to speak, &c.
---------------------	---	---------------------	--

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

አስተኞች :	he causing to speak, &c.	አስተኞችዎ :	they causing to speak, &c.
----------------	--------------------------	-----------------	-------------------------------

Compound Aorist.

አስተኞችዎ :	{ he causes (caused) to speak, &c..	አስተኞችዎ :	{ they cause (caused) to speak, &c..
-----------------	--	-----------------	---

Compound Preterite.

አስተኞች፡ ንበት :	{ he caused &c. to speak, &c.	አስተኞችዎ፡ ንበት :	{ they caused &c. to speak, &c.
---------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------	------------------------------------

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያስተኞች :	{ may he cause to speak, &c. the same as የክቡር::	ያስተኞች :	{ may they cause to speak, &c.
----------------	---	----------------	-----------------------------------

5. IMPERATIVE.

እስተኞች :	{ do thou make to speak.	እስተኞች :	do you make to speak.
----------------	-----------------------------	----------------	-----------------------

6. INFINITIVE.

מִתְּבָרֵךְ: to cause (the causing) to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **מִתְּבָרֵךְ**: one who causes to speak.

Relative Perfect, **מִתְּבָרֵךְ**: he who caused to speak.

Present, **מִתְּבָרֵךְ**: he who causes to speak.

K. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

תִּפְחַדְתָּ: He was entirely humbled; humbled himself entirely.

The force of this conjugation is intensity added to forms D and F: its characteristic is reduplication of the prolonged first radical with the objective תִּ: prefixed. As its conjugation is the same as **תִּפְלַעַ**: we abstain from detailing it.

L. TWELFTH CONJUGATION.

תִּפְגַּזְתָּ: Broke to pieces.

The force of this conjugation is intense action, represented by a reduplication of the second radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

תִּפְגַּזְתָּ: he broke to pieces, &c.

PLURAL.

תִּפְגַּזְתָּ: they broke to pieces, &c.

Present and Future.

צִפְגַּזְתָּ: { he breaks, &c. to
pieces, &c.

צִפְגַּזְתָּ: { they break, &c. to
pieces, &c.

3d pers. masc.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

צִפְגַּזְתָּ: &c.

צִפְגַּזְתָּ: &c.

Compound Preterite.

צִפְגַּזְתָּן: נִזְקָדָה: { he broke, &c.
to pieces, &c.

צִפְגַּזְתָּן: נִזְקָדָה: { they broke, &c.
to pieces, &c.

Compound of Probability.

צִפְגַּזְתָּן: עַסְפָּה: { he may pro-
bably break
to pieces, &c.

צִפְגַּזְתָּן: עַסְפָּה: { they may probably
break to pieces, &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. m. ՃՈՂՈԸ : may he	ՃՈՂՈԴ : may they
... f. ՃՈՂՈԸ : may she	
2d p. m. ՃՈՂՈԸ : } mayest thou	ՃՈՂՈԴ : may you } break to pieces.
... f. ՃՈՂՈԸ : }	
.. hon. 1. ՃՈՂՈԴ : may you	
.. hon. 2. ՃՈՂՈԴ : may you	
1st ... ՃՈՂՈԸ : may I	ՃՅՈՂՈԸ : may we

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc. ՌՈՂՈԸ : he breaking to pieces, &c.	ՌՈՂՈԴՓ : { they breaking to pieces, &c.
---	--

Compound Aorist.

ՌՈՂՈԸՓՃ : { he breaks (broke) to pieces, &c.	ՌՈՂՈԴՓՃ : { they break (broke) to pieces, &c.
---	--

Compound Preterite.

ՌՈՂՈԸ : ՆՈՀ : { he broke, &c. to pieces, &c.	ՌՈՂՈԴՓՃ : ՆՈՀ : { they broke &c. to pieces, &c.
--	---

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ՌՈՂՈԸ : } do thou break to pieces, &c.	ՌՈՂՈԴ : do ye break to pieces, &c.
---	---

6. INFINITIVE.

ԾՈՂՈԸԸ: to break to pieces.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple., **ՌՈՂՈ**: one who breaks to pieces.*Rel. Pret.* **ՔՌՈՂՈ**: he that broke to pieces.*Pres.* **ՔԾՎՌՈՂՈԸ**: he that breaks to pieces.

M. THIRTEENTH CONJUGATION.

ՀՔՃԵՐ: He performed great works.

The force of this conjugation is an addition of intensity to the Third Conjugation: this is represented by a reduplication and prolongation of the second radical, with the Preformative **Հ**:::

I. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	ՀՔՃԵՐ : { he performed great works, &c.	ՀՔՃԵՐ : { they performed great works, &c.

SINGULAR.	<i>Present and Future.</i>	PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. ΠΡΕΓ-ΓΙΑ:	{ he performs, &c. great works, &c.	ΠΡΕΓ-ΓΙΑ: { they perform great works, &c.

2. CONTINGENT-

Simple.

የየራሱ፡ &c.

Compound Preterite.

ያደርጋች፡ ንበድ፡ { he performed &c.
great works, &c. **ያደርጋች፡ ንበድ፡** { they performed
&c. great works,
&c.

Compound of Probability.

ያደርጉ: { he may probably perform great works.
ያደርቻ: { they may probably perform great works,
ይደርቻ: &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያደርጉት: { may he perform great works, &c. | **ያደርጉት:** { may they perform great works, &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

እደረጃ: { he performing great works. | **እደረጃዎች:** { they performing great works, &c.

Compound Aorist.

Compound Preterite.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. እያደርግ፡ { do thou perform | እያደርግ፡ { do ye perform great
Fem. እያደርጋ፡ { great works. | works.

6. INFINITIVE.

महाकार्यः: to perform (the performance of) great works.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, नपुणः: one who performs great works.

Rel. Perf. የዚጋጌ: he who performed great works.

Pres. **பூங்பெருமன்**: he who performs great works.

N. FOURTEENTH CONJUGATION.

תְּסַבֵּחַ: He counselled with others, gave and took advice, advised frequently.

תְּסַבָּחַ: He went and returned, went to and fro, i.e. walked.

The force of this conjugation is double intensity, reciprocity, and repetition of the action expressed in the verb. This is represented by reduplication and prolongation of the second radical. Its flexion and conjugation is quite the same as in the Sixth Conjugation.

O. FIFTEENTH CONJUGATION.

תְּפִגְגַּחַ: He conversed with another, spoke frequently.

The nature of this conjugation is the same as the preceding; and as to form, it differs only in having the first radical long, in conformity with the sixth species, which it resembles entirely in flexion and conjugation.

P. Q. R. S. SIXTEENTH, SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, & NINETEENTH CONJUGATIONS.

שִׁיכַח: "To be stiff," "obdurate." *Intransitive.*

שְׁדִיכַח: "To stiffen." *Transitive.*

תְּסַבָּחַ: "He returned," "was returned." *Passive, & Reflective.*

תְּפִגְגַּחַ: "He reviled." *Intensitive.*

The chief peculiarity of these four species consists in doubling the third radical, or gemination.—As we shall have an opportunity of treating more fully upon the Geminant Verbs, we merely mention these forms here; and pass on to the remaining forms of the Regular Trilateral Verb.

T. TWENTIETH CONJUGATION.

אֲגַפֵּנַ: He talked one out of any thing, dissuaded.

This and the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth species are rather remarkable for their singular Preformatives, which are not in use in the cognate dialects. The conjugation of **אֲגַפֵּנַ**: is similar to that of **אֲגַלֵּת**: we therefore proceed.

U. TWENTY-FIRST CONJUGATION.

אֲפִילַגַּנַ: He folded his hands.

In what the peculiar force of this species consists, we cannot determine.

V. TWENTY-SECOND CONJUGATION.

אֲטַלְטַ: He rubbed thin between his fingers.

The reduplication of the second and of the third radical, which consti-

tutes the peculiar character of this species, serves to express, as a sort of diminution, a peculiar modification of the original action.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ՃԹԹՃՃ: { he rubbed thin between his fingers, &c. | **ՃԹԹՃՃ:** they rubbed thin, &c.

Present and Future.

ՔՃԹԹՃՃ: he rubs thin, &c. | **ՔՃԹԹՃՃՃ:** they rub thin, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ՔՃԹԹՃՃ: &c.| **ՔՃԹԹՃՃ:** &c.*Compound Preterite.*

ՔՃԹԹՃՃ: { he rubbed (&c.) thin, | **ՔՃԹԹՃՃՃ:** { they rubbed (&c.)
 ինչ: } &c. } ինչ: } thin, &c.

Compound of Probability.

ՔՃԹԹՃՃ: { he may probably | **ՔՃԹԹՃՃ:** { they may probably
 քսֆՃ: } rub thin, &c. &c. } քսֆՃ: } rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

ՔՃԹԹՃՃ: may he rub thin, &c. | **ՔՃԹԹՃՃՃ:** may they rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

ՃԹԹՃՃ: he rubbing thin, &c. | **ՃԹԹՃՃՓ:** they rubbing thin &c.

Compound Aorist.

ՃԹԹՃՃՓ: { he rubs (rubbed) | **ՃԹԹՃՃՓ:** { they rub (rubbed)
 thin, &c. } thin, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ՃԹԹՃՃ: { he rubbed (was rub- | **ՃԹԹՃՃՓ:** { they rubbed (were
 ինչ: } bing) thin, &c. } ինչ: } rubbing) thin, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՃԹԹՃՃ:** { do thou rub | **ՃԹԹՃՃ:** do you rub thin, &c.

Fem. **ՃԹԹՃՃ:** { thin, &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ԱՄՃԹԹՃՃ: to rub thin, the rubbing thin between the fingers.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ՃԹԹՃՃ:** one who rubs thin, &c.

Relative Perf. **ՔՃԹԹՃՃ:** he who has rubbed thin, &c.

Pres. **ՔօդՃԹԹՃՃ:** he who rubs thin, &c. &c.

W. TWENTY-THIRD CONJUGATION.

Τ&ΤΔΤΔ: It was rubbed thin between the fingers.

This is a Passive derivation from the preceding conjugation, to be treated entirely as the Fourth Conjugation.

X. TWENTY-FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ΑΞΑΠΖΦ: It shone, glittered, sparkled, resplended.

This form seems to be derived from ΠΖΦ: "to fulminate," "to lighten"; and the Preformative ΑΞ— appears to have either a diminutive or a frequentative effect.

2. *Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of the Trilateral Verbs.*

Having thus exhibited the conjugation of the various forms of the Regular and Perfect Trilateral Verb, we now proceed to the consideration of the Imperfect Forms of Trilateral, of Perfect and Imperfect Forms of Biliteral, and of the various forms of Pluriliteral Verbs. We shall endeavour to point out, especially by paradigms, where it is necessary, and the peculiarities in the flexion and conjugation of each; not in order to accumulate materials for the memory, but to facilitate the comprehension of the structure of this part of the language. We notice,

I. TRILITERAL VERBS whose First Conjugation is A (Α: or Ο::)

The chief peculiarity of these verbs consists in the liability under which they are to have the first radical contracted with every Preformative acceding to the Verb, according to the rule laid down in Part I. Chap. VII. 2. A.B. For the purpose of exemplifying, we select the two Verbs Ασωι: "he believed," and Απω: "he passed."

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple Form, Ασωι: He believed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite. Regular, as ΗΠΩΣ::

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ΡΨΜΓΔ: he ... fem. ΤΨΜΓΛΗ: she } believes, will	ΡΨΜΓΔΡ: they believe, will
2d .. masc. ΤΨΜΓΛΨ: } thou believest, wilt	ΤΨΜΓΛΗΨ: you believe, will
... hon. 1. ΡΨΜΓΔ: } you believe, will	
... 2. ΤΨΜΓΛΗΨ: }	
1st.. com. ΑΨΜΓΛΨ: I believe, shall	ΑΓΨΜΓΛΨ: we believe, shall

2. CONTINGENT,

As the Indicative Present, without the Auxiliary ՚Ա:

	SINGULAR.	3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ՔԱՅּ: may he		ՔԱՅּ: may they believe.
... fem.	ՔԱՅּ: may she		
2d .. masc.	ՔԱՅּ: } mayest thou		ՔԱՅּ: may you believe.
... fem.	ՔԱՅּ: }	believe.	
... hon. 1.	ՔԱՅּ: }		
... ... 2.	ՔԱՅּ: }		
1st. . com.	ՔԱՅּ: may I		ՔԱՅּ: may we believe.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ՀՊՄԾ: he believing, &c. | ՀՊՄՆՈՒ: they believing, &c.

Regular; as, ԻՌԱԾ: &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ՀԱՅּ: } do thou believe!	| ՀԱՅּ: do ye believe!
Fem. ՀԱՅּ: }	

6. INFINITIVE.

ԹՎԱՅּ: to believe, the believing, faith, trust.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ՀԱՅּ: one who believes, a believer.

Relative Perfect, ՔԱՅּ: he who believed. ՔԱՅּՒ: she who believed, &c.

Relative Present, ՔԱՅּ ՔՎՈՒ: he who believes, &c.

ՔՎՈՒՅՄ: she who believes, &c.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Objective Voice.

ԴԱՅԱ: He was believed, accredited, was trustworthy, faithful, entrusted himself.

Flexion and Conjugation according to the Fourth Conjugation of the Regular Trilateral Verb; with the exception, that the characteristic ՚: because it has joined to itself the vowel of the first radical, is not dropped, but retained in all the forms.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d pers. masc.	ԴԱՅԱ: he was trusted, &c.	ԴԱՅԱ: they were trusted, &c.

Present and Future.

ԵԴԱՅԱ: he is trusted, &c. | ԵԴԱՅԱՐ: they are trusted, &c.

SINGULAR.

2. CONTINGENT.

PLURAL.

אַתָּה: &c.**אַתָּה**: &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

תִּתְּחִזֵּךְ: he being trusted, &c. | **תִּתְּחִזֵּקְוָתִים**: they being trusted, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **תִּתְּחִזֵּךְ**:Fem. **תִּתְּחִזֵּקְתִּי**:**תִּתְּחִזֵּקְוָתִים**: be ye faithful.6. INFINITIVE.
מִתְּחִזֵּקָה: to be believed, faithfulness, &c.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **תִּתְּחִזֵּךְ**: one who is believed.*Rel. Pret.* **מִתְּחִזֵּקָה**: he who was believed, faithful, &c.*Present*, **מִתְּחִזֵּקָה**: he who is believed, &c.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***אֲתַּחֲזָה**: He made believe, persuaded.

This form corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb **אָתַּחֲזָה**: The first radical **א**: is absorbed by the characteristic Pre-formative **אֲ**:: No Subjunctive form.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***אֲתַּחֲזָה**: He accredited, attested, entrusted.

This form, which joins the characteristics of the Objective and of the Transitive Voice in nature and form, answers the Tenth Conjugation of the Perfect Trilateral Verb.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***תַּחֲזָה**: Passed and repassed, trespassed, varied.

In this form, which corresponds with the Fourteenth Conjugation of the Regular Trilateral Verb, the first radical, **א**:, is dropped; but the **ת**: is retained when Prefixes are joined; e.g. Contingent, **אַתְּחִזְגָּה**:: Infinitive, **מִתְּחִזְגָּה**::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative and Intensive Voice.***አስተሳለድ:** He made pass in different ways.In this form the Causative **አስ:** is joined to the preceding Conjugation.

II. SECOND CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Trilateral Geminants.

(See page 56, II.)

These verbs seem to have been derived from Biliterals which are lost, but whose second radical has been doubled. (See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.) In conjugating these verbs, the geminant letters are often contracted into one; but that letter, although the Abyssinians have no mark for distinguishing the accent, shows its origin, by having the tone.

It will be observed, that there are, among the ten different Conjugations of this class, four which have the **ች:**, either with the Transitive **አ:**, or the Intransitive **ጥ:** prefixed.

In looking at the numerous verbs of this class, mentioned in the note, page 56, it will be seen that all classes of letters, except the gutturals and the vowel letters, are subject to gemination.

The general mode of conjugating being the same in this as in all other classes of verbs, attention is to be paid especially to those forms which have gemination, and to those which have the contraction.

After these preliminary remarks, we proceed to give the Paradigms.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

አዋወ: neut. He went away; act. He dismissed.

Gemination exists in this Conjugation—in the Indicative, Preterite, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive and Simple, and Relative Preterite Participles: *Contraction* in the remaining Moods and Tenses.

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **አዋወ:** he dismissed. **አዋወዎ:** they dismissed.... fem. **አዋወጥ:** she dismissed.2d ... masc. **አዋወዣ:**} thou dismissedst.... fem. **አዋወጠ:**} thou dismissedst.... hon. 1. **አዋወ:**} you dismissed.... 2. **አዋወጥዣ:**} you dismissed.1st .. com. **አዋወዣ:** I dismissed.**አዋወጥዣ:** you dismissed.**አዋወዣ:** we dismissed.

SINGULAR.

Present and Future.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. ΣΛΦΔ:	he	} dismisses.	ΣΛΦΠ: they dismiss.
... . fem. ΤΛΦΠΤ:	she		
2d .. masc. ΤΛΦΠΨ:		} thou dismissest.	ΤΛΦΠΤΨ: you dismiss.
... . fem. ΤΛΦΡΠΗ:			
... . hon. 1. ΣΛΦΠ:		} you dismiss.	
... . hon. 2. ΤΛΦΠΤΨ:			
1st .. com. ΖΛΦΠΨ:	I dismiss.		ΖΖΛΦΠΨ: we dismiss.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ΣΛΦ:	fem. ΤΛΦ:	ΣΛΦ:
2d .. .	ΤΛΦ:	ΤΛΦ:
... . hon. 1. ΣΛΦ:	2. ΤΛΦ:	
1. ΖΛΦ:		ΖΖΛΦ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ΣΛΦΦ:	may he	} dismiss.	ΣΛΦΦ: may they dismiss.	
... . fem. ΤΛΦΦ:	may she			
2d .. masc. ΤΛΦΦ:	} mayest thou		ΤΛΦΦ: may you dismiss.	
... . fem. ΤΛΦΦ:				
... . hon. 1. ΣΛΦΦ:	} may you			
... 2. ΤΛΦΦ:				
1st .. com. ΖΛΦΦ:	may I		ΖΖΛΦΦ: may we dismiss.	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc. ΔΦ:	he	} dismissing.	ΔΦΦ: they dismissing.	
... . fem. ΔΦ:	she			
2d .. masc. ΔΦΨ:	} thou		ΔΦΤΨ: you dismissing.	
... . fem. ΔΦΠ:				
... . hon. 1. ΔΦΦ:	} you			
... 2. ΔΦΤΨ:				
1st .. com. ΔΦ:	I		ΔΦΨ: we dismissing.	

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc. ΔΦΔ:	he dismisses, &c.	ΔΦΦΔ: they dismiss.
... . fem. ΔΦΠΤ:	she dismisses.	
2d .. masc. ΔΦΨΔ:	} thou dismissest.	ΔΦΤΨΔ: you dismiss.
... . fem. ΔΦΠΔ:		
... . hon. 1. ΔΦΦΔ:	} you dismiss.	
... 2. ΔΦΤΨΔ:		
1st .. com. ΔΦΡΠΨ:	I dismiss.	ΔΦΓΔ: we dismiss.

Compound Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.
ΔΦ: ήπει: he dismissed, &c. | **ΔΦΩ:** ήπει: they dismissed, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

m. **ΔΦΦ:** *fem.* **ΔΦΦ:** do thou dismiss. | **ΔΦΦ:** do ye dismiss.

6. INFINITIVE.

συΔΦΦ: To dismiss, the dismissal, dismissal.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple.

Simple Act. **ΔΦΦ:** one who dismisses.

Pass. **ΔΦΦ:** one who is dismissed.

Rel. Perf. **ΡΛΦΦ:** he who has dismissed.

Pres. **ΡσηλΦ:** he who dismisses.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active or Transitive Voice.

κεψΦΦ: He thinned, rarefied, refined.

We need scarcely to mention, that this form corresponds with the Third Conjugation of the Perfect Triliterals. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Simple, and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative Present, the Contingent, and Rel. Part. Present; both Gemination and Contraction in the Constructive and Imperative. Having presented a pretty full view of the preceding conjugation, it will suffice in the present one to give merely the leading types; i.e. 3d person masc. sing. and common plural of those paradigms which have all the Persons, besides the more simple Moods.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.
κεψΦΦ: he refined, &c. | **κεψΦΦ:** they refined.

Present and Future.

ρεψΔ: he refines. | **ρεψΦΔ:** they refine.

2. CONTINGENT.

ρεψ: | **ρεψ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ρεψΦΦ: may he refine. | **ρεψΦΦ:** may they refine.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

κεψΦ: and **κεψΦΦ:** he refining. | **κεψΦΦ:** and } **κεψΦΦΦ:** they refining.

Compound Aorist.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
ՀՀՓՃ:	and } he refines.	ՀՀՓՓՃ:	and } they refine.
ՀՀՓՓՃ:	he refines.	ՀՀՓՓՓՃ:	they refine.

Compound Preterite.

ՀՀՓ: նու:	and ՀՀՓՓ: նու::	ՀՀՓՓՈՒ: նու:	and ՀՀՓՓՓՈՒ:
he refined.		they refined.	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ՀՀՓ: and ՀՀՓՓ:	do thou	ՀՀՓ: and ՀՀՓՓ:	do ye refine.
Fem. ՀՀՓ: and ՀՀՓՓ:	refine.		

6. INFINITIVE.

ԹՎՀՓՓ: to refine, the refining, rarefaction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple. **ՀՀՓՓ:** a refiner.

Rel. Perf. **ՔՀՓՓ:** he who refined.

Pres. **ԲԹՎՔՀՓՓ:** he who refines.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive or Objective Voice.

ԴԱՓՓ: He was dismissed.

This conjugation has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood. Besides this, it is regularly conjugated, after the manner of the Fourth Conjugation of the Perfect Trilateral Verbs.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Active and Intensive Voice.

ԴԱՓՓ: He yawned. **ԴՊՃՃ:** He persecuted.

Both in nature and form, this conjugation resembles the Fifth of the Perfect Trilateral Verb. It preserves gemination in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Perfect Participle. In the other Moods and Tenses, it is contracted.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
ԴՊՃՃ:	he persecuted.	ԴՊՃՃ:	they persecuted.

Present and Future.

ՔՊՃՃ:	he persecutes.	ՔՊՃՃ:	they persecute.
--------------	----------------	--------------	-----------------

2. CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.
አጥቃ:

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| የጥቃ:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

አጥቃ: he persecuting.**| አጥቃዎ:** they persecuting.*Compound Aorist.***አጥቃዋል:** he persecutes.**| አጥቃዋል:** they persecute.*Compound Preterite.***አጥቃ: ንበረ:** he persecuted.**| አጥቃዎ: ንበረ:** they persecuted.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አጥቃዎ:**} do thou perse-**| አጥቃዎ:** do ye persecute.Fem. **አጥቃቸ:**} cute.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማጥቃቸ: to persecute, the persecuting, persecution.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አጥቃዎ:** a persecutor.*Rel. Perf.* **የጥቃዎ:** he who persecuted.*Present,* **የመጥቃዎ:** he who persecutes.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intensive Voice.***ተጥቃዎ:** He was persecuted, habitually persecuted.

This form is conjugated after the Sixth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb; has no peculiar Subjunctive; and geminates and contracts after the third form of this class.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስመራደ:** He embittered.

Corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Trilateral Verb, and is conjugated like the first form of this class.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አንጥተት:** He cheated.

A peculiar form, of which, as we have not hitherto had a similar one, we give here an outline.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite Regular.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.
አንጥተ: he cheated.

ያንጥታል: he cheats.

የንጥተ:

3d pers. masc.
አንጥተ: he cheating.

አንጥተዋል: he cheats.

አንጥተ: ንበ: he cheated.

Masc. **አንጥተ: }** do thou cheat. | Fem. **አንጥተች: }** do ye cheat.

PLURAL.

| **አንጥተዎች**: they cheated.

Present and Future.

| **ያንጥታል**: they cheat.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

| **የንጥተ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

| **አንጥተዎ**: they cheating.

Compound Aorist.

| **አንጥተዋል**: they cheat.

Compound Perfect.

| **አንጥተዎች: ንበ**: they cheated.

5. IMPERATIVE.

ማንጥተት: to cheat, the cheating.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማንጥተት: to cheat, the cheating.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አንጥተች**: a cheater.

Rel. Perf. **የንጥተተ**: he who cheated.

Present, **የመጥጥች**: he who cheats.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Passive Voice.

ተንጥተ: He was cheated.

This is the Passive form of the preceding derivation; and, in gemination, is regulated by the Third Conjugation of this class.

I. K. NINTH AND TENTH CONJUGATIONS.

Reflective Voice.

አንጠረ: and **ተንጠረ**: He stretched himself.

The peculiarity of these two forms, the power of which seems to be the same, consists in the length of both the geminating letters. On account of their length, they cannot be contracted. They assume, therefore, no Subjunctive form; and the Geminants retain their length, except in the

Constructive, which retains the last radical short, and enters a **ת**: which servile, also, is as a paragoge added in the Infinitive; thus:

SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
אַזְמַדְכָּתִ: { he stretching him- self, &c.	אַזְמַדְכָּתִוּ: { they stretching themselves, &c.
INFINITIVE.	
מַזְמַדְכָּתִ: the stretching, to stretch, oneself.	

III. THIRD CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Geminants whose first radical is **ח**:

This class numbers only a few Verbs. They combine the imperfections of contraction in the beginning and at the end, i.e. the imperfections of both the preceding classes. For an exhibition, we select the Verbs **חָהַי**: "he commanded," and **חָבָבָה**: "it was painful."

This class has but four Conjugations; the first of which is Intransitive or Active; the second, Objective, Intransitive, or Reflective; the third, Causative; and the fourth, Intensive.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

חָהַי: He commanded.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
חָהַי : he commanded.		| חָהַי : they commanded.

חָהַי : he commands.	| חָהַי : they command.
-----------------------------	------------------------------

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

חָהַי:	| חָהַי :
----------------	----------------

3d pers. masc.	3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
חָהַי : may he command.	| חָהַי : may they command.	

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

2d p. masc. חָהֵי : he commanding.	| חָהֹוּי : they commanding.
---	-----------------------------------

... fem. חָהֵי : she commanding.	
---	--

2d .. masc. חָהָי : thou commanding.	| חָהֹטְבָּה : you commanding.
---	-------------------------------------

... fem. חָהָי :	
... hon. 1. חָהָוּי : } you commanding.	

... hon. 2. חָהֹטְבָּה : } you commanding.	
---	--

1st.. com. חָהֵי : I commanding.	| חָהַזְבָּה : we commanding.
---	------------------------------------

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc. ՃԻՎԾ : he }	commands.	ՃԻՎԾ : they command.
... . . fem. ՃԿԼՔ : she }		
2d .. masc. ՃԻՎԾ :	{ thou commandest.	ՃԿՄՑԾ : you command.
... . . fem. ՃԿՐԾ :		
... . . hon. 1. ՃԻՎԾ :	{ you command.	
... . . hon. 2. ՃԿՄՑԾ :		
1st.. com. ՃԿԼՄ : I command.		ՃԻԳԾ : we command.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՃԻՒ**: } do thou command. | **ՃԻՒ**: do ye command.
 Fem. **ՃԻՒԵ**: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ՊԳԻՒ: to command, the commanding, command.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ՃԻՒ**: one who commands, a commander.

Rel. Pret. **ՔԻՒ**: he who commanded.

Present, **ՊՈՎՔԻ**: he who commands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive.

ԴԱՍԱՅՈՒ: He felt pain, was sick. **ԴԻՒ**: He was commanded, he obeyed.

In this conjugation, the **Դ**: is retained throughout; and contraction of the second and third radical takes place in the Constructive Mood only. No Subjunctive. Second radical is treated as in all the Objective forms.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

ՃՐԱՍԱՅՈՒ: He made sick, gave or caused pain.

The first radical **Ճ**:, absorbed in the Preformative **Ր**:, undergoes no further change. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Indicative, Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative, Present, and Constructive; and both Gemination and Contraction in the Contingent. Respecting the latter, we think, that when it stands by itself, it is geminated; but when it receives any addition at the beginning or at the end, it is contracted.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አበታሙዣ፡ He nursed sick persons.**

This conjugation corresponds with the Tenth of the Perfect Triliterals, and with the Fourth of the First Class of Imperfect Triliterals. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood.

3. *Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs.*

Biliteral Verbs are, in the Amharic Language, exceedingly numerous; owing especially, as will be seen hereafter, to the many contractions from Trilateral Verbs, by which they became Biliterals. In treating on these Verbs, it will be best to divide them into four distinct classes; namely, (a) Perfect; (b) Imperfect; (c) Contracted; (d) Irregular and Anomalous Biliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—*Perfect Biliterals.*

These are Verbs which have the two radical letters in the first form, do not begin with any vowel letter, and are conjugated regularly. They have this resemblance to some of the Contracted forms, that the paragogic **ተ፡፡** is added to most of its Infinitives, and enters into the Constructives. They are conjugated through Eight different Species or Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active, and Transitive Voice.***ገኝ፡ He flourished. ጥን፡ Was great. ስጠ፡ He gave.**

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ስጠ፡ he gave.	ስጠ፡ they gave.
... fem. ስጠች፡ she gave.	
2d ... masc. ስጠሁ፡ } thou gavest.	ስጠችሁ፡ you gave.
... fem. ስጠሽ፡ } you gave.	
... hon. 1. ስጠ፡ }	
... 2. ስጠችሁ፡ }	
1st ... com. ስጠሁ፡ I gave.	ስጠኑ፡ we gave.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ՃՈՂԱ**: he gives.
 ... fem. **ՃՈՂԱՒ**: she gives.
 2d .. masc. **ՃՈՂԱՍ**: } thou
 ... fem. **ՃՈՂԱԼՈՒ**: } givest.
 ... hon. 1. **ՃՈՂԱ**: } you
 2. **ՃՈՂԱՀՄ**: } give.
 1st .. com. **ՃՈՂԱՍ**: I give.
 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ՃՈՒ**: fem. **ՃՈՒ**:
 2d .. masc. **ՃՈՒ**: fem. **ՃՈՒ**:
 ... hon. 1. **ՃՈՒ**: 2. **ՃՈՒ**:
 1st ... **ՃՈՒ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE

3d p. masc. **ՃՈՒ**: may he give.
 ... fem. **ՃՈՒ**: may she give.
 2d .. masc. **ՃՈՒ**: } mayest thou
 ... fem. **ՃՈՒ**: } give.
 ... hon. 1. **ՃՈՒ**: } may you
 2. **ՃՈՒ**: } give.
 1st .. com. **ՃՈՒ**: may I give.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE with ՚:

3d p. masc. **ՈՐԴ**: he giving.
 ... fem. **ՈՐԾ**: she giving.
 2d .. masc. **ՈՐԴՍ**: } thou
 ... fem. **ՈՐԾՈՒ**: } giving.
 ... hon. 1. **ՈՐԴՈՒ**: } you
 2. **ՈՐԾՈՒ**: } giving.
 1st .. com. **ՈՐԾ**: I giving.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc. **ՈՐԴՎԱ**: he gives.
 ... fem. **ՈՐԾՎԾ**: she gives.
 2d .. masc. **ՈՐԴՎԱ**: } thou
 ... fem. **ՈՐԾՎԾՈՒ**: } givest.
 ... hon. 1. **ՈՐԴՎԱ**: } you
 2. **ՈՐԾՎԾՈՒ**: } give.
 1st .. com. **ՈՐԾՎԱՍ**: I give.

PLURAL.

ՃՈՂԱ: they give.
ՃՈՂԱՀՄ: you give.
ՃՈՂԱՆՅ: we give.

ՃՈՒ:**ՃՈՒ**:**ՃՈՒ**:**ՃՈՒ**: may they give.**ՃՈՒ**: may you give.**ՃՈՒ**: may we give.

5. CONSTRUCTIVE with ՚:

ՈՐԴՈՒ: they giving.
ՈՐԾՈՒ: you giving.
ՈՐԾՆՅ: we giving.

ՈՐԴՎԱ: they give.
ՈՐԾՎԾՈՒ: you give.
ՈՐԾՎՆՅ: we give.

Simple Form without T: (rare).

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ՃԱ**: he being great.
 ... fem. **ՃԱ**: she being great.
 2d .. masc. **ՃԱՅ**: } thou being
 ... fem. **ՃԱՐՈ**: } great.
 ... hon. 1. **ՃԱՅ**: } you being
 ... 2. **ՃԱԺԱՅ**: } great.
 1st.. com. **ՃԱ**: I being great.

PLURAL.

ՃԱՅՈ: they being great.
ՃԱԺԱՅ: you being great.
ՃԱՀԱՅ: we being great.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՈՊ**: **ՈՊ**: } do thou give. | **ՈՊԻ**: **ՈՊԻ**: do ye give.
 Fem. **ՈՊԵ**: **ՈՊԵ**: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ՍՈՒՄՈՒՔ: to give, the giving. **ՍՈՒՄՎ**: to drink, the drinking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ՈՊԵ**: and **ՈՊԵ**: a giver.

Rel. Pret. **ՔՈՄ**: he who gave.

Pres. **ՔՊՈՎՈՒՔ**: he who gives.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

ՃՐԴ: He beautified, praised. **ՃՃԴ**: He grew.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ՃՃԴ**: he grew.
 ... fem. **ՃՃԴԻ**: she grew.
 2d .. masc. **ՃՃԴՅ**: } thou
 ... fem. **ՃՃԴՐՈ**: } grewest.
 ... hon. 1. **ՃՃԴ**: } you
 ... 2. **ՃՃԴԺԱՅ**: } grew.
 1st.. com. **ՃՃԴՅ**: I grew.

PLURAL.

ՃՃԴ: they grew.
ՃՃԴԺԱՅ: you grew.
ՃՃԴՀԱՅ: we grew.

3d pers. masc.

Present and Future.

ՔՔՆՃ: he grows, &c.

| **ՔՔՆՅՈ**: they grow.

2. CONTINGENT.

ՔՔՆ: &c.

| **ՔՔՆ**: &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE, with ተ::

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አበቃቻ: he preparing. | **አበቃቻዎ**: they preparing.

Without ተ::

አደገ: he growing. | **አደገዎ**: they growing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አደገ**: } do thou grow. | **አደገ**: do ye grow.
Fem. **አደገ**:

6. INFINITIVE.

ማዳቀ: to grow, the growth.**ማቅረቻ**: to prepare, the preparing, preparation.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አደገ**: one who grows. **አጠቃ**: one who irrigates.*Rel. Pret.* **የፈገ**: he who grew.*Pres.* **የመፈገ**: he who grows.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Objective Voice.***ተሰጠ**: He was given.

This has nothing peculiar. It is treated like other objective forms, and has the paragogic ተ:: uniformly.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive or Causative Voice.***አሰግና**: He beautified, glorified.

Has the paragogic ተ:::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.

አሰግና: he beautified. | **አሰግናዎ**: they beautified.

Present and Future.

ያሰግና: he beautifies. | **ያሰግናዎ**: they beautify.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያሰግና: | **ያሰግና**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያሰግና: may he beautify. | **ያሰግና**: may they beautify.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አሰግናቸ: he beautifying. | **አሰግናቸዎ**: they beautify.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሰግና**: } do thou beautify. | **አሰግና**: do ye beautify.
Fem. **አሰግና**:

6. INFINITIVE.

መጥገኘት: to beautify, beautifying.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, አስተኛ: beautifier.

Rel. Pret. የሰነድ: he who beautified.

Present, የመሬቻ: he who beautifies.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive or Causative Voice.

አጥጋ: He caused to grow, trained, reared, educated.

Differs only in form from the preceding conjugations. It has no paragogic ተ:, and is conjugated like አጥመት: in the Third Conjugation of the first class of Imperfect Trilateral Verbs.

F. G. H. The Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Conjugations are treated like Trilateral Geminants.

II. SECOND CLASS.

Imperfect Bilaterals, which have እ: for the first Radical Letter.

The first radical እ: undergoes the usual changes, as shown in the preceding conjugations. The paragogic ተ: prevails through all the conjugations of this class, which contains but few verbs. The verb እበ: "He saw," containing all the different forms of Conjugations of this class, we have selected for exhibition.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Subjective, Intransitive, and Transitive Voice.

እበ: He saw.

I. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

እበ: he saw, &c., like በዚ::

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. የእበ: he sees.

የእበ: they see.

... fem. ተእበች: she sees.

...

... masc. ተእበዎ፡፡ } thou seest.

ተእበዎ፡፡ you see.

... fem. ተእበች፡፡ } you see.

...

... hon. 1. የእበ፡፡ } you see.

...

... hon. 2. ተእበች፡፡ } you see.

...

1st.. com. እይበሁ፡ I see.

እይበሁ፡ we see.

2. CONTINGENT.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. ¶¶:	fem. ¶¶:	¶¶::
2d .. masc. ¶¶:	fem. ¶¶:	¶¶:
... hon. 1. ¶¶:	2. ¶¶:	
1st.. com. ¶¶:		¶¶¶:

PLURAL.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ¶¶: may he see.	¶¶: may they see.
... fem. ¶¶: may she see.	
2d p. masc. ¶¶: } mayest thou see.	¶¶: may you see.
... fem. ¶¶: }	
... hon. 1. ¶¶: } may you see.	
.... 2. ¶¶: }	
1st.. com. ¶¶: may I see.	¶¶¶: may we see.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc. ¶¶¶: he seeing.	¶¶¶¶: they seeing.
... fem. ¶¶¶: she seeing.	
2d p. masc. ¶¶¶¶: } thou seeing.	¶¶¶¶¶: you seeing.
... fem. ¶¶¶¶: }	
... hon. 1. ¶¶¶¶: } you seeing.	
.... 2. ¶¶¶¶¶: }	
1st.. com. ¶¶¶: I seeing.	¶¶¶¶: we seeing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ¶¶: } do thou see.	¶¶: do ye see.
Fem. ¶¶: }	

6. INFINITIVE.

¶¶¶: the seeing, sight, aspect.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None. *Relative Preterite*, **¶¶:** he who saw.

Present, **¶¶¶¶:** he who sees.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, or Intransitive Voice.

¶¶: He was seen, appeared.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Preterite.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. ተቋ፡ he was seen. | ተቋ፡ they were seen.

... fem. ተቋች፡ she was seen.

2d p. masc. ተቋሁ፡

... fem. ተቋሽ፡

... hon. 1. ተቋ፡

... 2. ተቋችሁ፡

1st.. com. ተቋሁ፡

ተቋችሁ፡

ተቋ፡

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. ይቋዋል፡ he is seen. | ይቋዋል፡ they are seen.

... fem. ተቋዋልች፡ { she is seen,
... &c.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ይቋለ፡ fem. ተቋለ፡ | ይቋለ፡

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ተቋተ፡ he appearing, &c. | ተቋተዎ፡ they appearing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ተቋ፡ } do thou appear. | ተቋ፡ do ye appear.
Fem. ተቋ፡ } &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ሙቋዋጥ፡ to be seen, the appearing, appearance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None. Relative Preterite, የቋዋል፡ he who appeared.

Present, የሙቋዋል፡ he who appears.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አሰጣጥ፡ He made to be seen, caused to appear, showed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. አሰጣጥ፡ he showed. | አሰጣጥ፡ they showed.

... fem. አሰጣጥች፡ she showed.

2d p. masc. አሰጣጥሁ፡ f. አሰጣጥሽ፡ አሰጋጥሁ፡

... hon. 1. አሰጣጥ፡ 2. አሰጋጥችሁ፡

... com. አሰጣጥሁ፡ አሰጣጥ፡

አሰጣጥ፡

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ՔՌՔԱ: he shows.	ՔՌՔՈՒ: they show.
.... fem. ՔՌՔՈՒ: she shows.	
2d p. masc. ՔՌՔՈՒ:	ՔՌՔՈՒ:
.... fem. ՔՌՔՈՒ:	
.... hon. l. ՔՌՔՈՒ:	
.... . . . 2. ՔՌՔՈՒ:	
1st. com. ՀՌՔՈՒ:	ՀԵՌՔՈՒ:
3d pers. masc.	2. CONTINGENT.
ՔՌԵ: fem. ՔՌԵ: &c.	| ՔՌԵ: &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ՔՌԵ: may he show.	ՔՌԵ: &c.
.... fem. ՔՌԵ: &c. may she show	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ՀՌՔՒ: he showing.	ՀՌՔՈՒ:
.... fem. ՀՌՔՒ: she showing.	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ՀՌԵ:	do thou show.	|	ՀՌԵ: do ye show.
Fem. ՀՌԵ:			

6. INFINITIVE.

ԹՊՐՄՒ: To show, the showing.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Rel. Pret. **ՔՌԲ:** he who showed.

Pres. **ԲԾՎՔՌԵ:** he who shows.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

ՀՈՒՏԲ: He made to be seen, brought into sight.

1. INDICATIVE PREDERITE.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ՀՈՒՏԲ: brought into sight.		| ՀՈՒՏԲ: &c.
ՀՈՒՏԲՒ: &c., like the preceding.		

Present and Future.

ՔՈՒՏԲԱ: he brings into sight.	| ՔՈՒՏԲՈՒ: they bring into sight.
--------------------------------------	--

2. CONTINGENT.

ՔՈՒՏԲԵ:	fem. ՔՈՒՏԲԵ: &c.	| ՔՈՒՏԲԵ: &c.
----------------	-------------------------	--------------------

3. SURJUNCTIVE.—None.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Causative and Reciprocal.

አስተያየት: He made look at each other; placed over against each other.

Is not, in form, different from the preceding; save the prefixing of **አለ:** and the changes which that undergoes; and, that in the Imperative it has **አስተያገ::**

III. THIRD CLASS.—*Contracted Bilinguals.*

This very numerous class is derived from Triliterals; which, in the Ethiopic and Tigré Languages, have either a Vowel letter **አ፡ Q፡ P፡** or **ሀ፡**, or a Guttural **ሀ፡ ደ፡ ተ፡** or **ነ፡** contracted with the preceding letter. The letter to which their vowel has thus been joined has been made long; whilst the verb itself has become a biliteral one. In some few cases of Quadrilaterals, two contractions have been made; and we have therefore Biliteral Verbs of two long radicals. Verbs contracted from Triliterals differ, as to whether the lost letter stood formerly in the middle or at the end; and this materially determines their form of conjugation.

(aa.) Verbs with an absorbed Guttural at the end.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive and Active Voice.

ገበ: *intrs.* He entered (went in). Eth. **ገበአ::**

The second radical is always long; except in the Constructive Mood, and in the Simple Participle.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ገበ : he went in.	ገበ : they went in.
.... fem. ገበች : she went in.	
2d .. masc. ገበሁ : } thou wentst in.	ገበችሁ : you went in.
.... fem. ገበቸ : }	
.... hon. 1. ገበ : } you went	
.... . 2. ገበችሁ : }	
1st... . ገበሁ : I went in.	ገበዎ : we went in.

Present and Future.

ይገባል: he goes in, &c. | **ይገባሉ**: they go in, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

ይገባ: fem. **ጥገባ**: | **ይገቡ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. 迦ַנְנָה :	may he go in.	迦ַנְנָהוּ :	may they go in.
.... fem. תַּנְנָה :	may she go in.		
2d p. masc. תַּנְנָה :	} mayest thou		
.... fem. תַּנְנָה :	} go in.	תַּנְנָהוּ :	may you go in.
.... hon. 1. תַּנְנָה :	} may you go		
.... 2. תַּנְנָה :	in.		
1st.. com. גַּנְנָה :	may I go in.	גַּנְנָהוּ :	may we go in.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m. גִּנְתָּה :	he entering.	גִּנְתָּהוּ :	they entering.
.... f. גִּנְתָּה :	she entering.		
2d .. m. גִּנְתָּה :	fem. גִּנְתָּהוֹת :	גִּנְתָּהָה :	
.... hon. 1. גִּנְתָּהוּ :	2. גִּנְתָּהָה :		
1st com. גִּנְתָּה :		גִּנְתָּה :	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. גַּנְנֵה :	} do thou enter.	גַּנְנֵהוּ :	do ye enter.
Fem. גַּנְנֵה :	}		

6. INFINITIVE.

מַעֲגַנְתָּה: to go in, the going in, the entrance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **גַּנְנָה**: *intrs.* one who enters in.

גַּנְנָה: that which is entered into, *i.e.* the interior.

Rel. Pret. **גַּנְנָה**: he who entered.

Pres. **מַעֲגַנְתָּה**: he who enters.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

גַּנְנָה: He made go in, introduced.—(Is quite regular.)

1. INDICATIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. Preterite. PLURAL.

גַּנְנָה: he introduced. | **גַּנְנָהוּ**: they introduced.

Present and Future.

גַּנְנָה: he introduces. | **גַּנְנָה**:

2. CONTINGENT.

גַּנְנָה: fem. **תַּנְנָה**: | **גַּנְנָה**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.

ՔՊՆ: may he introduce. | **ՔՊՈՒ:** may they introduce.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ՀՂՈՒՄ: he introducing. | **ՀՂՈՒՄՈՒ:** they introducing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՀՂՈՒ:** } do thou introduce. | **ՀՂՈՒ:** do ye introduce.
Fem. **ՀՂՈՒ:** }

6. INFINITIVE.

ԾՂՈՂԴ: the introducing, introduction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ՀՂՈՒ:** one who introduces.Rel. Perf. **ՔՊՆ:** he who introduced.Pres. **ԲԱՑՔՊՆ:** he who introduces.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive.***ԴՂՈՒ:** *impersonal.* It was proper, It belonged.

Is treated like other Passives—has no Subjunctive.

The Constructive has **ԴՂՈՂԴ:** and in other respects it is like **ԴՂՈՒ:**

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՀՂՈՒ:** He married.The **ԴՂ:** is long throughout; and the Preformative **Հ:** is treated as in all the Transitive forms.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive of the preceding.***ԴՂՈՒ:** Was married.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ՀՈՂՈՒ:** He caused to go in; introduced.Subjunctive, **ՔՈՂՈՒ::** | Imperative, **ՀՈՂՈՒ::**Constructive, **ՀՈՂՈՂԴ:** | Infinitive, **ԾՈՂՈՂԴ::**

All the other Forms quite regular.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ΩΦΦ:** (from ΩΦ: it sufficed) was quite sufficient.

A geminating form. The long middle letter is retained throughout, and the rest treated like ΗΠ::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Reiterative.***ΑΙΠΗ:** He frequently went in, often cohabited, behaved properly.

This conjugation is like a transitive of the preceding one: the long penultima is retained throughout, and the rest treated like ΗΠ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

ΧΡΦΦ: He comforted, strengthened.

The two middle letters remain long; Χ: is treated as in all Transitive forms: there is no Subjunctive; and as to the rest, this conjugation is like the others of this class.

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intense Passive.***ΤΧΦΦ:** Was comforted.

Is treated like other Passives, retains the long penultima, and has the other peculiarities of this class.

(bb.) *Forms with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle.*

In these forms, the original guttural having been in the middle, on its absorption, the first radical has become long. It retains, however, its length only in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, and the Infinitive Moods of the Active; and through the whole of the Passive forms, except the Constructive. It has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive; but uses, as is generally done in such cases, the Contingent for the purpose. It has, besides, the paragogic Τ: extremely seldom; because it appears that letter is intended for compensation for final absorbed letters, of which there are none in this class.

This class has seven different Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ማል : (Eth. **ሙል :**) He swore, took an oath.

1. INDICATIVE PREDERITE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. m.	ማል : he swore.	ማል : they swore.
... f.	ማልኩ : she swore.	
2d .. m.	ማልሁ : fem. ማልሽ :	ማልኩሁ :
.. hon. 1.	ማል : 2. ማልኩሁ :	
1st com.	ማልሁ :	ማል :

Present and Future.

3d p. m. **ያምላል :** he swears. | **ያምላለ :** they swear.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ያምል :** fem. **ጥምል :** | **ያምሉ :**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ጥል : he swearing.	ጥልዎ :
... f.	ጥል : she swearing.	
2d .. m.	ጥልሁ : fem. ጥልሽ :	ጥልኩሁ :
.. hon 1.	ጥልዎ : 2. ጥልኩሁ :	
1st com.	ጥል :	ጥል :

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ማል :**} do thou swear. | **ማል :** do ye swear.
Fem. **ማል :**}

6. INFINITIVE.

ሙማል : to swear, the swearing. -

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ማል :** one who swears.

Rel. Pret. **የማል :** he who swore.

Pres. **የማልም :** he who swears.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

እማል : He made swear.

Contingent, **ያምል ::** *Imperative,* **እምል :**

Constructive, **እምል :** *Infinitive,* **ማማል ::**

(See the above remarks.)

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***Τσηλ:** He was sworn.

<i>Contingent,</i> Ρσηλ::	<i>Imperative,</i> Τσηλ::
<i>Constructive,</i> Τσηλ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> Σισηλ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive (Causative) Voice.***Ζητησηλ:** He made swear.

<i>Contingent,</i> Ρζητησηλ::	<i>Imperative,</i> Ζητησηλ::
<i>Constructive,</i> Ζητησηλ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> Σητησηλ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Frequentative (Intensive) Voice.***Ζητητηλ:** Distributed by casting (lots). Radix, ηλ: He cast.

<i>Contingent,</i> Ρζητητηλ::	<i>Imperative,</i> Ζητητηλ::
<i>Constructive,</i> Ζητητηλ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> Σητητηλ::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocatice Voice.***Τσηηηηλ:** Mutually swore, conspired.

<i>Contingent,</i> Ρσηηηηλ::	<i>Imperative,</i> Τσηηηηλ::
<i>Constructive,</i> Τσηηηηλ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> Σισηηηηλ::

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***Τσηηηηηηλ::** He adjured, earnestly entreated.

<i>Contingent,</i> Ρσηηηηηηλ::	<i>Imperative,</i> Τσηηηηηηλ::
<i>Constructive,</i> Τσηηηηηηλ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> Σισηηηηηηλ::

(c.c.) Forms with an Absorbed Ρ: in the Middle.

These forms are determined by the rule laid down, Part I. Ch. VII. 4. E. On the absorption of the Ρ: its corresponding vowel ε has been joined to the first radical; which, whenever it is shortened, changes ε into a short i; but when lengthened (as in the Fourth Conjugation), the first radical is put into the Fourth Order, and Ρ: is restored. No paragogic Τ: is in this class.

We take the two Verbs, Τληλ: He sold, and Αγηλ: He went.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ኩመ: Active, He sold. Ethiopic, ወቻመ:

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ኩመ:** he sold.

.... fem. **ኩመች:** she sold.

2d .. masc. **ኩዋሁ:** fem. **ኩዋሽ:**

... hon. 1. **ኩመ:** 2. **ኩዋቅሁ:**

1st.. com. **ኩዋሁ:**

PLURAL.

ኩመ: they sold.

ኩዋቅሁ:

ኩዋኑ::

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. **ይኩመል:** he sells.

| **ይኩመሉ:** they sell.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ይኩታ:** fem. **ተኩታ:** | **ይኩመ:**

2d **ተኩታ:** fem. **ተኩጭ:** | **ተኩመ:**

... . . hon. 1. **ይኩመ:** 2. **ተኩመ:**

1st.. com. **አኩታ:**

አንኩታ:

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ይኩታ: may he sell.

| **ይኩመ:** may they sell.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ኩመ:** he selling.

ኩመው:

.... fem. **ኩመ:** she selling.

2d .. masc. **ኩመሁ:** fem. **ኩመሽ:**

ኩዋቅሁ:

... . . hon. 1. **ኩመው:**

... . . . 2. **ኩዋቅሁ::**

1st.. com. **ኩመ:**

ኩመኗ:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ኩመ:** } do thou sell.

Fem. **ኩመች:** }

ኩመ: do ye sell.

6. INFINITIVE.

ሙኩታ: to sell, the selling, sale.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple (a) Act. **ኩም:** one who sells, a seller.

(b.) **ኩም:** a thing sold, merchandize.

Rel. Preterite, **የኩመ:** he who sold.

Present, **የሙኩታ:** he who sells.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***ՀԺԵՔ:** He made go, drove the threshing ox.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔԺԵՔ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀԺԵՔ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ՔԺԵՔ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊԺԵՔ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀԺԵՔ::		

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ԴԱԼՄ:** He was sold.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՁԱԼՄ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ԴԱԼՄ:
<i>No Subjunctive.</i>		<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՍԱԼՄ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	ԴԱԼՄ:		

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ԴԱՐՄ:** He traded, dealt, carried on commerce.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՁԱՐՄ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ԴԱՐՄ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ԴԱՐՄ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՍԱՐՄ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative (Transitive) Voice.***ՀՈՒԵՔ:** He made to go.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՈՒԵՔ::	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀՈՒԵՔ::
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ՔՈՒԵՔ::	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊՈՒԵՔ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀՈՒԵՔ::		

(dd.) *Forms with an Absorbed Ո:* in the Middle.

According to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 5, and 6. the middle letter Ո: has been absorbed; its vowel o attached to the first radical. This is further shortened, in the Subjunctive Constructive and Active Imperative, into ւ. But in those forms which have long letters, Ո: is restored. In some of these, it forms diphthongs of the fourth order. Those forms of this class, whose first radical is a diphthong, as Փ-Ր: Փ-Ա: Փ-Պ: Ի-Հ: Դ-Ջ:, have the Causative form with ՀՈ: and the paragogic Դ:; which the forms with simple o have not.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***Φσυ:** He stood.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	<i>Preterite.</i>	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. Φσυ: he stood.	Φσυ·:	they stood.
... fem. Φσυ·τ̄: she stood.		
2d .. masc. Φσυζ: fem. Φσυτ̄:	Φσυ·τ̄-υ·:	
... hon. 1. Φσυ·: 2. Φσυ·τ̄-υ·:		
1st.. com. Φσυ-υ·:	Φσυ-υ·:	

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. χΦσυ: fem. τΦσυ:	χΦσυ·:
2d .. masc. τΦσυ: fem. τΦση:	τΦσυ·:
... hon. 1. χΦσυ·: 2. τΦσυ·:	
1st.. com. χτΦσυ·:	χτΦσυ·:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. χΦσυ: may he stand.	χΦσυ·: may they stand.
... fem. τΦσυ: may she stand.	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. Φσυ: he standing.	ΦσυΦ·: they standing.
... fem. Φση: she standing.	
2d .. masc. Φσυζ: fem. Φσυτ̄:	Φσυ·τ̄-υ·:
... hon. 1. ΦσυΦ·: 2. Φσυ·τ̄-υ·:	
1st.. com. Φση:	Φσυ-υ·:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. Φσυ·:	stand!
Fem. Φση·:	

6. INFINITIVE.

συΦσυ: to stand, the standing, station, state.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ΦΦση:** one who stands (see Dictionary). **Φσυ:** Eth. standing, straightforward.

Rel. Pret. **ΡΦσυ:** he who stood.

Pres. **Ρση Φσυ:** he who stands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***ՀՓՍՈ:** He made to stand, erected.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՓԾՈ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀՓԾՈ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ՔՓԾՈ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊՓԾՈ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀՓՎՈ:		

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ԴՓՍՈ:** He was erected.—No Subjunctive.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՓԾՈ: (ՔՓՈՓԾՈ:)	<i>Imperative,</i>	ԴՓԾՈ: (ԴՓՈՓԾՈ:)
<i>Constructive,</i>	ԴՓՎՈ::	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊՓԾՈ:: (ՄՊՈՓԾՈ:)

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ԴՓՈՓԾՈ:** He withheld, resisted.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՓՈՓԾՈ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ԴՓՈՓԾՈ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ԴՓՈՎՈ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊՓՈՓԾՈ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ՀՈՂՓ-Ր:** He caused to wait.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՈՂՓ-Ր:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀՈՂՓ-Ր:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ՔՈՂՓ-Ր:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊՈՂՓ-ՐԴ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀՈՂՓ-ՐԴ:		

F. G. SIXTH AND SEVENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Intensive Forms.***ԴՓՓ-ՄՈ:** and **ԴՓՓԾՈ::** To resist to the end.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՓՓ-ԾՈ: and	<i>Imperative,</i>	ԴՓՓ-ԾՈ: & ԴՓՓԾՈ:
	ՔՓՓԾՈ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՊՓՓ-ԾՈ: and
<i>Constructive,</i>	ԴՓՓՎՈ:		ՄՊՓՓԾՈ:

IV. FOURTH CLASS.—*Doubly Imperfect Biliterals.*

These are subdivided into three species:

- (aa) Verbs doubly contracted.
- (bb) Verbs beginning with **ח**: and terminating in an absorbed guttural.
- (cc) Beginning with **פ**: which absorbs a guttural.

(aa) *Doubly Contracted Biliterals.*

These are but few in number; derived from Quadrilaterals, and flexible through three Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive. (Active) Voice.

חח: He was loose, lax.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **חח:** he was lax.

.... fem. **חחַת:** she was lax.

.... masc. **חחָם:** fem. **חחָתָם:**

.... hon. 1. **חחָר:** 2. **חחָתָרָם:**

1st.. com. **חחָעָה:**

PLURAL.

חחָם: they were lax.

חחָתָרָם:

חחָעָה:

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. **חחָה:** he is lax.

.... fem. **חחָתָה:** she is lax.

2d.. masc. **חחָהָם:**

.... fem. **חחָתָהָם:**

.... hon. 1. **חחָהָרָם:**

.... 2. **חחָתָרָם:**

1st.. com. **חחָהָעָה:**

חחָהָמָה: they are lax.

חחָתָרָמָה:

חחָהָעָה:

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **חחָה:** fem. **חחָה:**

2d .. . **חחָה:** ... **חחָה:**

... . hon. 1. **חחָה:** 2. **חחָה:**

1st.. com. **חחָה:**

חחָה:

חחָה:

חחָה:

חחָה:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ԱՃՊ: he being lax.	ԱՃԹՈՒ:
.... fem. ԱՃԴ: she being lax.	ԱՃԴԻՒ:
2d .. masc. ԱՃԵՒ:	ԱՃԵԴԻՒ:
.... fem. ԱՃԵՐԻ:	
.... hon. l. ԱՃԹՈՒ:	
.... ... 2. ԱՃԵԴԻՒ:	
1st.. com. ԱՃԵ:	ԱՃԵՇ:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ԱՃ:** fem. **ԱՃ:** be lax. | **ԱՃ:** do ye be lax.

6. INFINITIVE.

ԱՎԱՃԻՒ: to be loose, lax.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Rel. Pret. **ԲՃԱ:** he who was lax.

Pres. **ԲՊՃԱ:** he who is lax.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

ՀՃԱ: To loosen, relax.

<i>Contingent,</i> ԲՃԱ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՃԱ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՃԱԴԻՒ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ԱՎԱՃԻՒ:

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive Reflective Voice.

ԴՃԵ: Was pitied.

<i>Contingent,</i> ԲՃԵ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ԴՃԵ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ԴՃԵԴԻՒ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ԱՎՃԵԴԻՒ:

(bb) *Biliterals beginning with Հ: and terminating in an Absorbed Guttural.*

They are but few, and have only Three Conjugations. They have the Paragogic Դ:

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***አጥ:** He wanted, had not.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. አጥ: he wanted.

... f. አጥች: she wanted.

2d ... m. አጥሁ: fem. አጥሽ: |

.. hon. 1. አጥ: 2. አጥችሁ: |

1st com. አጥሁ: |

PLURAL.

አጥ: they wanted.

አጥችሁ: |

አጥ:: |

*Present, and Future.***ያጥል:** he wants. fem. **ታጥለች:** | **ያጥል:** they want.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያጥ: fem. **ታጥ:** |**ያጥ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያጥ: fem. **ታጥ:** |**ያጥ::** |

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አጥተ: he wanting. fem. **አጥተ:** | **አጥተዎ:** they wanting.

5. IMPERATIVE.

አጥ: fem. **አይሸ:** do thou want. | **አጥ:** do ye want.

6. INFINITIVE.

መጥጥት: To want, the wanting, want.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **ያጥ:** he who wanted.*Pres.* **የጠቅጥጥ::** he who wants.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Intransitive Voice.***ታጥ:** To be wanted.*Contingent,* **ይታጥ::** |*Imperative,* **ታጥ::***Constructive,* **ታጥተ::** |*Infinitive,* **መታጥተ::**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive, Causative Voice.***ՀՌՊ:** To deprive.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ՔՌՊ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀՌՊ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ՔՌՊ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ԹՎՌՊԴ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀՌՊԴ:		

(cc) *Verb beginning with P: which absorbs a Guttural.*

Only one Verb has been discovered to belong to this class.

ՔԻ: Eth. **ՀԿԻ:** To seize.The **P:** is shortened into **Ք:** and even reduced to the mere vowel **i.**

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՔԻ:** He seized.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ՔԻ:** he seized.... f. **ՔԻՒ:** she seized.2d .. m. **ՔԻՄ:** fem. **ՔԻՐ:**.. hon. 1. **ՔԻ:** 2. **ՔԻՒՄ:**1st com. **ՔԻՄ:**

PLURAL.

ՔԻ: they seized.**ՔԻՒՄ:****ՔԻ:***Present and Future.*3d p. m. {**ՔԻՃ:** & } **ՔԻՃԱ:** he seizes.**ՔԻՃ:** and **ՔԻՃԱ:** they seize.... f. {**ԴԿԻՃ:** & } **ԴԿԻՃԱ:** she seizes.**ԴԿԻՃԱ:** and **ԴԿԻՃԱ:**2d .. m. **ԴԿԻՃԱ:** & **ԴՎԿԻՃԱ:**... f. **ԴԿԻՃԱ:** & **ԴՎԿԻՃԱ:**.. hon. 1. **ՔԻՃ:** and **ՔՎՔԻՃ:**... 2. {**ԴԿԻՃԱ:** & **ԴՎԴԿԻՃԱ:**1st com. **ԴԿԻՃԱ:** & **ԴՎԴԿԻՃԱ:****ԴՆԿԻՃ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻՃ:**

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ՔԻ:****ՔԻ:**... f. **ԴԿԻ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻ:****ԴԿԻ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻ:**2d .. m. **ԴԿԻ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻ:**... f. **ԴԿԻ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻ:**.. hon. 1. **ՔԻ:** 2. **ԴԿԻ:** & **ԴՎԴԿԻ:**1st com. **ԴԿԻ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻ:****ԴՆԿԻ:** and **ԴՎԴԿԻ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. m.	ՔԻ: may he seize.	ՔԻ: may they seize.
... f.	ԴՔԻ: may she seize.	
2d .. m.	ԴՔԻ: fem. ԴՔԻ:	ԴՔԻ:
.. hon. 1.	ՔԻ: 2. ԴՔԻ:	
1st com.	ԴՔԻ:	ԴՔԻ::

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ՔԻ: he seizing.	ՔԻՈ: they seizing.
... f.	ՔԻ: she seizing.	
2d .. m.	ՔԻԱ: fem. ՔԻՈՒ:	ՔԻԿՈՒ:
.. hon. 1.	ՔԻՈ: 2. ՔԻԿՈՒ:	
1st com.	ՔԻ:	ՔԻՇ::

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	ՔԻ:	} do thou seize.
Fem.	ՔԻ:	
		ՔԻ: do ye seize.

6. INFINITIVE.

ԱՐՔԻ: to seize, the seizing, seizure.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple. **ՔԻ:** a seizer.Rel. Pret. **ՊՔԻ:** he who seized.

Present.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc.	ՊՏՎՔԻ: and ՊՏՎՔԻ: he who seizes.
... fem.	ՊՏՎԴՔԻ: and ՊՏՎԴՔԻ: she who seizes.
2d .. masc.	ՊՏՎԴԻ: and ՊՏՎԴՔԻ:
.... fem.	ՊՏՎԴԻ: and ՊՏՎԴՔԻ: } thou who seizest.
.... hon. 1.	ՊՏՎԻ: and ՊՏՎՔԻ:
.... . . . 2.	ՊՏՎԴԻ: and ՊՏՎԴՔԻ: } you who seize.
.... com.	ՊՏՎՔԻ: I who seize.

PLURAL.

ՊՏՎՔԻ: and **ՊՏՎՔԻ:** they who seize.**ՊՏՎԴԻ:** and **ՊՏՎԴՔԻ:** you who seize.**ՊՏՎՀԻ:** and **ՊՏՎԴՔԻ:** we who seize.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***ΧΡΗ:** He caused to seize.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΡΞΗ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ΧΡΗ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ΡΞΗ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> οηρΗ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΗΞΗ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ΤΡΗ:** He was seized.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΡΞΗ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ΤΡΗ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ΤΡΗ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> οηρΗ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ΧΠΡΗ:** He caused to be seized, betrayed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΡΠΗ: and ΡΠΡΗ::	<i>Imperative,</i> ΧΠΡΗ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ΡΠΡΗ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> οηπρΗ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΧΠΗ: and ΧΠΡΗ::	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Passive, Frequentative and Reciprocatice.***ΤΡΡΗ:** He frequently, alternately, reciprocally, completely, seized, or was seized.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΡΡΡΗ::	<i>Imperative,</i> ΤΡΡΗ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΤΡΡΗ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> οηρρΗ::

4. Various Conjugations of Quadrilateral and Pluriliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—Reduplicated and Transposed Bilaterals.

This numerous class has Eleven Conjugations. (See pp. 56—60.)

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Active Voice.***ΛΟΩΛΟΩ:** It was green. **ΦΩΦΩ:** He beat.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΡΛΟΩΛΟΩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ΛΦΩΛΩ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ΡΛΦΩΛΦΩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> οωλφωλφω::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΑΦΩΛΦΩ:	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.***ՀԱՊԱԳՈ:** He made green, verdant, refreshed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔԼՄԾԱԳՈ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀԱՊԱԳՈ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔԼՊԱԳՈ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊԼՊԱԳՈ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀԱՊԱԳՈՎ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ՏԱՓԱՓ:** He was bedaubed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔԼՓԱՓ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՏԱՓԱՓ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ՏԱՓԱՓ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՍԱՓԱՓ:

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Active Voice.***ՀԻՓԻՓ:** He shook.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔԻՓԵՓ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՅՓԵՓ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՅՓԵՓ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՅՓԵՓ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՅՓԵՓ:	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ՏԱՓԱՓ:** He bedaubed, washed himself.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔԼՓԱՓ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՏԱՓԱՓ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ՏԱՓԱՓ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՍԱՓԱՓ::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***ՀՈՂՓԱՓ:** He caused bedaubing. (**ՀՈՂԻՇԽՈՇ:** He moved, crept.)

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՈՂՓԱՓ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՈՂՓԱՓ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՈՂՓԱՓ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՈՂՓԱՓ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՈՂՓԱՓ:	

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՀՅՈՒՇՈՅ:** He beat, shook.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՈՒՇՈՅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՅՈՒՇ-ՈՅ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՅՈՒՇ-ՈՅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄԿՅՈՒՇՈՅ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՅՈՒՇ-ՈՅ:	

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive Voice.***ԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ:** He trembled.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄօԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Active Voice.***ՀՅՓՈՓՈՅ:** He stirred up, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՅՓՈՓՈՅ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄօՀՅՓՈՓՈՅ::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ:** He was stirred, He moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄօԴՅՓՈՓՈՅ::

L. ELEVENTH COJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***ՀՈՂՅՓՈՓՈՅ:** He stirred, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՈՂՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՈՂՅՓՈՓՈՅ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՈՂՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՈՂՅՓՈՓՈՅ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՈՂՅՓՈՓՈՅ:	

II. SECOND CLASS.—Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical Reduplicated and Transposed.

This class is not numerous, and it has Six Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive Voice.

ՃՐՃՊՅ: He was blunt.

I. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ՃՐՃՊՅ:** he was blunt. | **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ:** they were blunt.

... fem. **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ՞:**

2d .. masc. **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ:**

... fem. **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ՞:**

... hon. 1. **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ:**

... hon. 2. **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ՞ՈՒ:**

1st.. com. **ՃՐՃԾՈՒ:**

PLURAL.

ՃՐՃԾՈՒՒ:

ՃՐՃԾՈՒ:

Present and Future.

ՃՃՐՃԾՈՒ: he is blunt. | **ՃՃՐՃԾՈՒՈՒ:** they are blunt.

2. CONTINGENT.

ՃՃՐՃԾՈՒ: fem. **ԴՃՐՃԾՈՒ:** | **ՃՃՐՃԾՈՒ:**

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ՃՐՃԾՈՒՒ: he being blunt. | **ՃՐՃԾՈՒՈՒ:**

5. NO IMPERATIVE.

6. INFINITIVE.

ՄՍՃՐՃԾՈՒՒ: to be blunt, the being blunt, bluntness.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Rel. Pret. **ԲՃՐՃՊՅ:** he who was blunt.

Pres. **ԲՊՋՃՐՃԾՈՒ:** he who is blunt.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive, and Intransitive Voice.

ՀՃՐՃՊՅ: He blunted. | **ՀԴՀԾՈՒՄ:** He murmured.

Contingent, **ԾԴՀԾՈՒԾՈՒ:** | *Imperative,* **ՀԴՀԾՈՒԾՈՒ:**

Subjunctive, **ԾԴՀԾՈՒԾՈՒ:** | *Infinitive,* **ՄՊԴՀԾՈՒԾՈՒ:**

Constructive, **ՀԴՀԾՈՒԾՈՒ:**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ጥዕላጂዋ**: Was blunted.

<i>Contingent</i> , የጥዕላጂዋ	<i>Imperative</i> , ተጥዕላጂዋ
<i>Constructive</i> , ተጥዕላጂዋ	<i>Infinitive</i> , መጥዕላጂዋ

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***እኩቃዊ**: He gave success.

<i>Contingent</i> , የእኩቃዊ	<i>Imperative</i> , እኩቃዊ
<i>Subjunctive</i> , የእኩቃዊ	<i>Infinitive</i> , መእኩቃዊ
<i>Constructive</i> , እኩቃዊ	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተኩቃዊ**: He had success, succeeded, prospered.

<i>Contingent</i> , የተኩቃዊ	<i>Imperative</i> , ተኩቃዊ
<i>Constructive</i> , ተኩቃዊ	<i>Infinitive</i> , መተኩቃዊ

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***ተንገረባ**: It became knotty.

<i>Contingent</i> , የተንገረባ	<i>Imperative</i> , ተንገረባ
<i>Constructive</i> , ተንገረባ	<i>Infinitive</i> , መተንገረባ

III. THIRD CLASS.

Geminants, probably derived from Triliterals, but having their original verb lost, so as not to be reckoned to the geminating Conjugation of the Trilateral Regular Verb. This class is but small—is inflected through six conjugations, similar to other Geminants.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.*Intransitive.***የ-በለስ:** He escaped.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይከ-በለስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ከ-በለስ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ይከ-በለስ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መከ-በለስ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ከ-በለስ:	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.*Passive Voice.***ተደመሰሳ:** He was destroyed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይደመሰሳ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተደመሰሳ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተደመሰሳ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መደመሰሳ::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተገ-ማለስ:** Walked nimbly, affectedly, proudly.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይገ-ማለስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተገ-ማለስ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተገ-ማለስ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መገ-ማለስ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.*Transitive Voice.***እስጠናቅ:** He cautioned.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይስጠናቅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> እስጠናቅ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ይስጠናቅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መሸጠናቅ::
<i>Constructive,</i> እስጠናቅ:	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.*Active Voice.***እንከባለስ:** He rolled about.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይንከባለስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> እንከባለስ:
<i>Constructive,</i> እንከባለስ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መንከባለስ::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.*Passive Voice.***ተንከባለስ:** He was rolled about.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይንከባለስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተንከባለስ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተንከባለስ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መንከባለስ::

~~~~~

## IV. FOURTH CLASS.

*Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals.*

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***መስኑን:** Was glorious.*Contingent,* **ዶመስኑን:**      *Imperative,* **መስኑን:***Subjunctive,* **ዶመስኑን:**      *Infinitive,* **መመስኑን::***Constructive,* **መስኑኬ:**

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***እመስኑን:** He glorified.*Contingent,* **ዶመስኑን:**      *Imperative,* **እመስኑን:***Subjunctive,* **ዶመስኑን:**      *Infinitive,* **ማወመስኑን::***Constructive,* **እመስኑኬ:**

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተመስኑን:** He was glorified.*Contingent,* **ዶመስኑን:**      *Imperative,* **ተመስኑን:***Constructive,* **ተመስኑኬ:**      *Infinitive,* **መመስኑን::**

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***እሰፍጠጥ:** He dismissed.*Contingent,* **ዶሰፍጠጥ:**      *Imperative,* **እሰፍጠጥ:***Constructive,* **እሰፍጠጥ:**      *Infinitive,* **ማሰፍጠጥ::**

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Passive Voice.***ተሰፍጠጥ:** He was dismissed.*Contingent,* **ዶሰፍጠጥ:**      *Imperative,* **ተሰፍጠጥ:***Constructive,* **ተሰፍጠጥ:**      *Infinitive,* **መሰፍጠጥ:**

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ՀՈՄՍՈՂՆ:** He causes to be glorious or glorified.

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i> ՔՈՄՍՈՂՆ:   | <i>Imperative,</i> ՀՈՄՍՈՂՆ:  |
| <i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՈՄՍՈՂՆ:  | <i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՈՄՍՈՂՆ: |
| <i>Constructive,</i> ՀՈՄՍՈՂՆ: |                              |

## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ԴԱՐՈՒԹ:** He overthrew completely.

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i> ՔԴԱՐՈՒԹ:  | <i>Imperative,</i> ԴԱՐՈՒԹ:    |
| <i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔԴԱՐՈՒԹ: | <i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊԴԱՐՈՒԹ:: |
| <i>Constructive,</i> ԴԱՐՈՒԹ: |                               |

## H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely Passive Voice.***ԴԻԼԱՐՈՒԹ:** He was completely overthrown.

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i> ՔԴԻԼԱՐՈՒԹ:  | <i>Imperative,</i> ԴԻԼԱՐՈՒԹ:    |
| <i>Constructive,</i> ԴԻԼԱՐՈՒԹ: | <i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊԴԻԼԱՐՈՒԹ:: |

## I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal and Reiterative Voice.***ՏՈՒԳՈՒՏ:** Took leave from each other.

|                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i> ՔՏՈՒԳՈՒՏ:  | <i>Imperative,</i> ՏՈՒԳՈՒՏ:    |
| <i>Constructive,</i> ՏՈՒԳՈՒՏ: | <i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՏՈՒԳՈՒՏ:: |

5. *Defective and Anomalous Verbs..*

Three of them—viz. I. The Auxiliary ՀԱ: “He is”; II. ՀՈՒ: “He was”; III. ԿՈՒ: “He is,”—have been conjugated before we entered upon the Regular Trilateral Verb. (See pp. 64, 65.) We proceed to give here the rest.

IV. *Various Conjugations of the Verb ՀԱ: “He said.”*

The irregularities in this verb are caused by the mixing together of the two forms ՀԱ: and ԴԱ: Eth. ՊԱՀ: “To say.” This verb has Ten Conjugations.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.*

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

3d p. masc. እስ፡ he said.

እስ፡ they said.

... fem. እስች፡ she said.

2d .. masc. እልሁ፡ fem. እልሽ፡

እልችሁ፡

... hon. 1. እስ፡ 2. እስችሁ፡

1st.. com. እልሁ፡

እል፤፡

*Present and Future.*

3d p. masc. ይለስ፡ he says.

የለስ፡ they say.

... fem. ተለለች፡ she says.

2d .. masc. ተለለሁ፡ f. ተያለሽ፡

ተለለችሁ፡

... hon. 1. ይለስ፡ 2. ተለለችሁ፡

1st.. com. ተለለሁ፡

እንለለን፤፡

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ይል፡ and ይበል፡

የል፡ and ይበል፡

... fem. ተል፡ and ተበል፡

2d .. masc. ተል፡ and ተበል፡

ተል፡ and ተበል፡

... fem. ተይ፡ and ተበይ፡

... hon. 1. ይለስ፡ and ይበለስ፡

... 2. ተለስ፡ and ተበለስ፡

1st.. com. እል፡ and እበል፡

እንል፡ and እንበል፡

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ተለስ፡ he saying.

ተለዥ፡

... fem. ተለስ፡ she saying.

ተለች፡

2d .. masc. ተለለሁ፡ fem. ተለሽ፡

ተለለችሁ፡

... hon. 1. ተለዥ፡ 2. ተለችሁ፡

1st.. com. ተለ፡

ተለን፡

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ተል፡ } do thou say.

የል፡ do ye say.

Fem. ተይ፡ }

## 6. INFINITIVE.

መሳጥ፡ To say, the saying, meaning, intention.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **¶**: one who says.

*Rel. Pret.* **¶**: he who said.

*Pres.* **¶**: he who says.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

**ՀՈՂ**: To deceive by talking.

*Contingent*, **Ք-ՈՂ**: | *Imperative*, **Հ-ՈՂ**:

*Constructive*, **Հ-ՈՂ-**: | *Infinitive*, **Մ-ՈՂ**::

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

**ԴՂՂ**: *pass.* To be said, called, named.

## 1. PRETERITE.

## SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ԴՂՂ**: he was called.

... f. **ԴՂՂՖ**: she was called.

2d .. m. **ԴՂՂԱՒ**: f. **ԴՂՂԱՐ**:

.. hon. 1. **ԴՂՂ**: 2. **ԴՂՂՖՍ**:

1st com. **ԴՂՂԱՒ**:

## PLURAL.

**ԴՂՂ**: they were called.

**ԴՂՂՖՍ**:

**ԴՂՂԱՆ**:

## Present and Future.

3d p. m. **ԶՂՂՋ**: he is called.

... f. **ԴՂՂՈՂՖ**: she is called.

*Contingent*, **ԶՂՋ**:

*Constructive*, **ԴՂՂ-**:

**ԶՂՂՋ**: they are called.

*Imperative*, none.

*Infinitive*, **Մ-ՂՋ**::

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**ԴՈՂ**: *pass.* from **ՀՈՂ**: To be deceived.

*Contingent*, **Զ-ԴՈՂ**: | *Imperative*, **Դ-ՈՂ**:

*Constructive*, **Դ-ՈՂ-**: | *Infinitive*, **Մ-Դ-ՈՂ**::

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

**ԴՂՂ**: To rumour in public.

Whether any more than the Preterite Indicative is extant of this form, we do not know.

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

**አጥስ:** He persuaded.

|                      |             |                    |              |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ያጥስ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>አጥስ:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>እጥስ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መጥስ::</b> |

## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

**ተጥስ:** To be persuaded, to say to each other.

|                      |             |                    |              |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ያጥስ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>ተጥስ:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>ተጥስ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መጥስ::</b> |

## H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

**ተጥጥል:** *recipr.* To say to each other.

|                      |              |                    |               |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ያጥጥል:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>ተጥጥል:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>ተጥጥል:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መጥጥል::</b> |

## I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

**ታለል:** He was talked into any thing, was persuaded, duped.

|                      |              |                    |               |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>յታለል:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>ታለል:</b>   |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>ታለል:</b>  | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መታለል::</b> |

## K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

**እታለል:** He persuaded, cheated.

|                      |              |                    |               |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>յታለል:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>እታለል:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>እታለል:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መታለል::</b> |

V. First Conjugation of the Verb **እኩል:** "To be equal," "amount to."

The remainder of this verb, **ተኩለል:** and **እስተኩለል:** is regular. The anomaly of the First Conjugation consists in its assuming more of the form **እኩል:** or **እሁል:** than of **እኩል:**, and in its not having all the Moods and Tenses. We give here all that is, as far as we know, extant.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite, none.**Present and Future.*

## SINGULAR.

|                                |                          |                |              |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>3d p. masc.</i>             | <b>ያህል:</b> he is equal, | <i>PLURAL.</i> | <b>ያህለሉ:</b> |
| The other Persons are wanting. |                          |                |              |

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d Person Masculine, **የዕላ**: Feminine, **ተዕላ**:

These two personal forms only are used with the signification, "Amounting to," "equal to;" e.g. **የመሳሰለች፡ የዕላ**: "equal to what he gives."

SUBJUNCTIVE, CONSTRUCTIVE, and IMPERATIVE—none.

INFINITIVE, **መኩል**: i.q. **መኩለል**: and **መኩሳል**: "the middle."

PARTICIPLES—Eth. **ሻነል**: "equal," "half."

*Rel. Pres.* **የመያሮል**: "what is equal to," "amounts to, about, almost"; e.g. **ጥስት፡ ተሁ**: **የመያሮል፡ለ** "amounting to (about) three thousand."

VI. Negative Verb **አል**: "Is not."

All that exists of this verb is this: **አል**: "it (he) is not." fem. **አልቻ**: Participle, **የአል**: fem. **የአልቻ**: "that which is not," "has not," "is without;" "without," "besides," "exclusively," "not including."

VII. Of the verb **አዋ**: (Eth. **አዋወ**) "To be greater," "larger," "excel;" in the First Conjugation, nothing is extant but the 3d pers. masc. Conting. **ያልዋ**: which is used as a sort of Comparative, "more," "greater," "especially"; and Participle, **የአዋልዋ**: **የግዢታልዋ**: "he, she, or it, who (which) is greater," "superior," "excels."

The Transitive form of this verb **አላዋ**: "he raised," "made excellent," is quite regular.

VIII. Verb **ሙዣ**: "He came," is, in its First Conjugation, destitute of an Imperative; whilst all the rest is regular and perfect. The Imperative is supplied by the form **፳**: Eth. and Tigr. **ቻለ፡** Sing. masc. **፳**: fem. **ቻ**: and **ቻለ**: "do thou come." Pl. **ቻ**: "do ye come." Only in very rare instances they use a regular form **ሙዣ**: **ሙዣ፡** **ሙዣ፡**; but it is against the custom.

IX. **ተወ**: "He left," "omitted," "abandoned," "left off."

## 1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                                    | <i>Preterite.</i> | PLURAL.       |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>ተወ</b> : fem. <b>ተወቻ</b>: | \| | <b>ተወ፡</b>    |
| 2d .. masc. <b>ተወ፡ህ</b> : fem. <b>ተወ፡ሽ</b>: | \| |  |
| ... hon. 1. <b>ተወ፡</b> 2. <b>ተወቻ፡</b> | \| | <b>ተወቻ፡</b>   |
| 1st.. com. <b>ተወ፡ህ</b>: | \| | <b>ተወ፡ክ</b> : |

SINGULAR. *Present and Future.* PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **ՃԴՓՃ:** he abandons. | **ՃԴՓՃ:** they abandon.

... . . fem. **ՃԴՓՃՔ:**

2d .. masc. **ՃԴՓՃՍ:**

... . . fem. **ՃԴՓՃՈՒ:**

(The rest is regular.)

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ՃԴՓ:** fem. **ՃԴՓ:** | **ՃԴՓ:**

... . . masc. **ՃԴՓ:** fem. **ՃԴՓ:**

(The rest is regular.)

## 3. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ՃԴՓ:** fem. **ՃԴՓ:** | **ՃԴՓ:**

2d .. masc. **ՃԴՍ:** fem. **ՃԴՈՒ:** | **ՃԴՏՍ:**

... . . hon. 1. **ՃԴՓ:** 2. **ՃԴՓՒՍ:**

1st.. com. **ՃԴՓ:** | **ՃԴՅ:**

## 4. IMPERATIVE.

masc. **ՃԴՓ:** fem. **ՃԴՓ:** | **ՃԴՓ:**

6. INFINITIVE. **ՃՈՒԹԻՒ:**7. PARTICIPLES. **ՐԴՓՈՒ:** **ՐԾՎԴՓՈՒ:**

The Transitive Conjugation of this verb, **ՃՈՒԹԻՒ:** "he caused to abandon," is analogous to the preceding; the **Փ:** being changed in the 2d Fem. Sing. of the Ind. Pres., Conting., and Imper. into **Պ:**, and rejected in the Constr.

X. *Verb Ճ: and ՃՐ: "to desire," "want," "seek."*

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.* Regular.

*Present and Future.*

## SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ՃՐՃ:** he wants. | **ՃՐՃ:** they want.

... . . fem. **ՃՐՃՔ:** she wants.

2d .. masc. **ՃՐՃՍ:** f. **ՃՐՃՈՒ:**

... . . hon. 1. **ՃՐՃՈՒ:** 2. **ՃՐՃՈՒՍ:**

1st.. com. **ՃՐՃՈՒ:** | **ՃՐՃՈՒՅ:**

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ՃՐ:** fem. **ՃՐ:** | **ՃՐ:**

2d .. masc. **ՃՐ:** fem. **ՃՐ:** | **ՃՐ:**

... . . hon. 1. **ՃՐ:** 2. **ՃՐ:**

1st.. com. **ՃՐ:** | **ՃՐ:**

| SINGULAR.                   | 3. CONSTRUCTIVE. | PLURAL.            |
|-----------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 3d p. masc. ኦጥ፡ he wanting. |                  | ብጥዎ፡ they wanting. |
| ... fem. ኦጥ፡ she wanting.   |                  |                    |
| 2d .. masc. በጥሁ፡ fem. በጥሽ፡  |                  | ብጥቸሁ፡              |
| ... hon. 1. በጥዎ፡ 2. በጥቸሁ፡   |                  |                    |
| 1st.. com. በኩ፡              |                  | ብጥኩ፡               |

## 4. IMPERATIVE.

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Masc. እስ፡ } do thou seek. | እስ፡ do ye seek. |
| Fem. እስ፡ }                |                 |

## 5. INFINITIVE.

መጥኑ፡ to want, &c. the want, desire, request.

## 6. PARTICIPLES.

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Simple, none.               | Perfect, የሚ፡ he who wanted. |
| Present, የማይ፡ he who wants. |                             |

The Transitive form of this verb, እስ፡ is only used impersonally, in the 3d person singular masc. and fem., with the signification, "to be requisite," or, in the mind of an Abyssinian, "to produce a feeling of want by absence"; e.g. አያየችም፡ "I do not want (it)." The forms used are these:

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| Preterite, እስ፡ | Contingent, የስ፡  |
| Present, የስል፡  | Infinitive, መጥኑ፡ |

XI. Of the verb የለም፡ which is negative to the verb እል፡ "He is," nothing is extant but the 3d person singular masc. የለም፡ "he (it) is not," fem. የለቻም፡ "she (it) is not," and plural የለም፡ "they are not." With Suffixes, it signifies "has (have) not," e.g. የለዎችም፡ "he has not." የለተም፡ "she has not." የለነም፡ "we have not," &c.

XII. The negative አይደለም፡ "Is not," is the negative answering the substantive verb ካወ፡ "He is." Whence it is derived, we know not. It is used only in the Preterite of the Indicative and Participle, which we give here.

| INDICATIVE.                   |            |                      |
|-------------------------------|------------|----------------------|
| SINGULAR.                     | Preterite. | PLURAL.              |
| 3d p. masc. አይደለም፡ he is not. |            | አይደለም፡ they are not. |
| ... fem. አይደለቻም፡              |            |                      |
| 2d .. masc. አይደለሁም፡           |            | አይደለቸሁም፡             |
| ... fem. አይደለሽም፡              |            |                      |
| ... hon. 1. አይደለም፡            |            |                      |
| ... 2. አይደለቸሁም፡               |            |                      |
| 1st.. com. አይደለም፡             |            | አይደለነም፡              |

*Relative Participle Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.                               | PLURAL.                        |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>የያለ</b> : he who is not. | <b>የያለ</b> : they who are not. |
| ... fem. <b>የያለች</b> :                  |                                |
| 2d .. masc. <b>የያለሁ</b> :               | <b>የያለችሁ</b> :                 |
| ... fem. <b>የያለሽ</b> :                  |                                |
| ... hon. 1. <b>የያለ</b> :                |                                |
| ... ... 2. <b>የያለች</b> :                |                                |
| 1st.. com. <b>የያለሁ</b> :                | <b>የያለች</b> :                  |

**አያለች**: also is used for the Adverb of Negation, "No."

## SECTION V.

*On the Connexion of Pronouns with Verbs.*

1. In other languages, this subject would be referred to the Syntax; but in the Semitic family, the Pronouns governed by Verbs are so closely joined to them, that it would be improper to do so, as the form of the verb is modified in no slight degree by this combination. We conceive it to be here the best place for exhibiting the mode in which it is performed, after having explained all the other processes to which the Amharic Verbs are subjected.

2. Before we entered on the consideration of the Verb, in the preceding Chapter, Sect. VIII. we mentioned those Pronouns which are joined to Verbs. We now give a brief statement of the regulations under which they are joined.

(a) All the forms of Verbs assume the Verbal Suffixes, except the two nominal forms, the Infinitive and the Simple Participle, which assume Nominal Suffixes; e.g. **አረስት**: **ሙዕበወ**: "my keeping him;" **ጋብ**: **ማርን**: **ተገኝነሱወ**: "his armour-bearer."

(b) All the forms which assume the Verbal Suffixes do receive them at the end, except the two forms which are inflected with the Auxiliary **ከለ**: i.e. the Present and Future Indicative, and the Aorist of the Constructive Mood; which place the Pronoun between the radical letters and the Auxiliary, so as to render it rather an Infix than a Suffix.

(c) With regard to the different degrees of power the Suffixes possess, of changing the letter to which they are joined, they are divided into light (*levia*) and heavy (*gravia*) Suffixes. The light Suffixes are those which are not preceded by a long ā: those which are preceded by a long ā are heavy Suffixes.

(d) The *light Suffixes* attach themselves to *ultimæ radicales* of the first order, without change; and to ult. rad. of the sixth order, by converting the latter into the first order, sometimes without change. The heavy suffixes convert ult. rad., in either of those two orders, into the fourth order.

(e) Ultima radicalis of the second and of the seventh order, in accordance with Part I. Ch. VII. 5 & 6.

a. changes **Ω:** into **Τ::**

b. is changed, if it is a guttural or palatine, into a diphthong of the fourth order: if not, the vowel is detached from the consonant; the latter being put into the sixth, and the former becoming **Ψ:** of the fourth order, before all the heavy suffixes. Before suffix 2d pers. hon. 1., it is either left unchanged, or changed into the sixth order, leaving the suffix as it is.

(f) Ult. rad. of the third and of the fifth order changes none of the light suffixes; but agreeably to Part I. Ch. VII. 4. D., when being attached to the heavy suffixes, it is generally changed into the sixth order; and **Ρ:** is added, to assume the long *ā* of the suffix.

(g) Ult. rad. of the fourth order neither suffers nor produces any change.

(h) With regard to the *insertion* or *infixion* of Pronouns, only this needs to be observed; that **እ:** of the Auxiliary **እእ:** being absorbed by the Pronoun, the latter, or, if it consists of more than one letter, its last letter, is put into the fourth order, **Υ:** being changed into **እ:** or **ጥ::**

These rules are illustrated by the following Table:

#### TABLE OF A VERB WITH SUFFIXES.

**መገበ:** He has fed.

##### 1. SIMPLE FORMS.

###### A. *Preterite.*

Masculine.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

|                |                                      |                 |                                       |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>መገበኝ:</b>   | he has fed me.                       | <b>መገበኝች:</b>   | she has fed me.                       |
| <b>መገበኩ:</b>   | he has fed thee (m.).                | <b>መገበኝቻ:</b>   | she has fed thee (m.).                |
| <b>መገበኩች:</b>  | he has fed thee (f.).                | <b>መገበኝቻች:</b>  | she has fed thee (f.).                |
| <b>መገበኩዎ:</b>  | he has fed you (hon. 1.).            | <b>መገበኝቻዎ:</b>  | she has fed you (h.1).                |
| <b>መገበኝቻዎ:</b> | he has fed you (hon. 2.).            | <b>መገበኝቻቻዎ:</b> | she has fed you (h.2).                |
| <b>መገበኝዎ:</b>  | he has fed him.                      | <b>መገበኝቋ:</b>   | she has fed him.                      |
| <b>መገበኝተ:</b>  | he has fed her.                      | <b>መገበኝቋተ:</b>  | she has fed her.                      |
| <b>መገበኝነ:</b>  | he has fed us.<br><small>PL.</small> | <b>መገበኝቋነ:</b>  | she has fed us.<br><small>PL.</small> |
| <b>መገበኝቃዎ:</b> | he has fed you.                      | <b>መገበኝቃዎ:</b>  | she has fed you.                      |
| <b>መገበኝቃዎ:</b> | he has fed them.                     | <b>መገበኝቃዎ:</b>  | she has fed them.                     |

| Masculine.               | SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.                 | Feminine.                                                        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּךְ:</b> | thou hast fed me.                       | <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּךְ:</b> thou ( <i>f.</i> ) hast fed me.         |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּךְ:</b> | thou hast fed him.                      | <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּךְ:</b> thou ( <i>f.</i> ) hast fed him.        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּךְ:</b> | thou hast fed her.                      | <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּךְ:</b> thou ( <i>f.</i> ) hast fed her.        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | thou hast fed us.<br><small>PL.</small> | <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> thou hast fed us.<br><small>PL.</small> |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | thou hast fed them.                     | <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> thou hast fed them.                     |

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, HONORIFIC, like the Third and Second Plural.

FIRST PERSON COMMON.

|                          |                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | I have fed thee ( <i>m.</i> )         |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | I have fed thee ( <i>f.</i> )         |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | I have fed you (hon. 1).              |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעָ:</b> | I have fed you (hon. 2).              |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | I have fed him.                       |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | I have fed her.<br><small>PL.</small> |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעָ:</b> | I have fed you.<br><small>PL.</small> |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעָ:</b> | I have fed them.                      |

THIRD PERSON.

|                          |                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | they have fed me.                       |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | they have fed thee ( <i>m.</i> )        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | they have fed thee ( <i>f.</i> )        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | they have fed you (h.1).                |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעָ:</b> | they have fed you (h.2).                |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | they have fed him.                      |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | they have fed her.                      |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | they have fed us.<br><small>PL.</small> |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | they have fed you.                      |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | they have fed them.                     |

PLURAL.

|                          |                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | you have fed me.                        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | you have fed him.                       |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | you have fed her.<br><small>PL.</small> |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | you have fed us.                        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | you have fed them.                      |
| <br>FIRST PERSON.        |                                         |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | we have fed thee ( <i>m.</i> )          |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | we have fed thee ( <i>f.</i> )          |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | we have fed you (h.1).                  |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּעַ:</b> | we have fed you (h.2).                  |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | we have fed him.                        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּאָ:</b> | we have fed her.<br><small>PL.</small>  |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | we have fed you.                        |
| <b>םְלַגְּ-תָּבֵּנִ:</b> | we have fed them.                       |

B. *Contingent.*

Masculine.

**ՃԾՈՂՈՇ:** let him feed me.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՎ:** let him feed thee (*m.*)  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՌ:** let him feed thee (*f.*)  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՓ:** let him feed you. (*h.1.*)  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՒ:** let him feed you. (*h.2.*)  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՓ:** let him feed him.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈԴ:** let him feed her.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՅ:** let him feed us.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՒՅ:** let him feed you.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՒԹՈ:** let him feed them.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

**ԴԾՈՂՈՇ:** let her feed me, &c. &c.  
 quite like **ՃԾՈՂՈՇ:** &c.  
 SECOND PERSON MASCULINE.  
**ԴԾՈՂՈՌ:** like the 3d pers. fem.  
 SECOND PERSON FEMININE.  
**ԴԾՈՂՈՇ:** mayest thou (*f.*) feed me.  
**ԴԾՈՂՈՓ:** mayest thou feed him.  
**ԴԾՈՂՈՔԴ:** mayest thou feed her.  
**ԴԾՈՂՈՅ:** mayest thou feed us.  
**ԴԾՈՂՈՔՄՈ:** { mayest thou  
 feed them.

FIRST PERSON.

**ԴԾՈՂՈՎ:** &c., assumes the Suffixes, like the 3d pers. masc.

THIRD PERSON.

PLURAL.

SECOND PERSON.

**ՃԾՈՂՈՇ:** let them feed me.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՎ:** let them feed thee.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՌ:** let them feed thee.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՓ:** let them feed you. (*h. 1.*)  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՓՀՅ:** { let them feed  
 you. (*hon. 2.*)  
**ՃԾՈՂՈԴ:** let them feed him.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈԴ:** let them feed her.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՅ:** let them feed us.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՓՀՅ:** let them feed you.  
**ՃԾՈՂՈՓԴՈ:** let them feed them.

**ԴԾՈՂՈ:** the same as with the 3d pers. plural.  
 FIRST PERSON.  
**ԴՆԾՈՂՈ:** the same as with the 3d pers. sing.

C. The *Imperative* joins the Suffixes in the same manner as the *Contingent*.

## D. Simple Constructive.

| Masculine.      | THIRD PERSON SINGULAR. | Feminine.                   |
|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>ሙግሩ:</b>     | he feeding me.         | <b>ሙግኑ:</b> she feeding me. |
| <b>ሙግሩ:</b> }   | he feeding thee.       | <b>ሙግኑ:</b> }               |
| <b>ሙግሩ:</b> }   | she feeding thee.      |                             |
| <b>ሙግሩ:</b> }   | he feeding you.        | <b>ሙግና:</b> }               |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> } | he feeding you.        | <b>ሙግና:</b> }               |
| <b>ሙግሩ:</b>     | he feeding him.        | <b>ሙግና:</b> }               |
| <b>ሙግና:</b>     | he feeding her.        | <b>ሙግና:</b> }               |
| <b>ሙግሩ:</b>     | he feeding us          | <b>ሙግና:</b> }               |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b>   | he feeding you.        | <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }             |
| <b>ሙግናቸው:</b>   | he feeding them.       | <b>ሙግናቸው:</b> }             |

## SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ሙግቡ:</b> thou feeding me. | \| <b>ሙግቡ:</b> thou feeding me. |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|

Assume the Suffixes like the same Persons in the Preterite.

Second Pers. Sing. honor. 3d and 2d Plural, the same as Preterite 3d and 2d Plural.

| FIRST PERSON SINGULAR. | FIRST PERSON PLURAL.  |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ሙግቡ:</b> }          | <b>ሙግቡቸሁ:</b> }       |
| <b>ሙግቡ:</b> }          | we feeding them.      |
| <b>ሙግቡ:</b> }          |                       |
| <b>ሙግቡ:</b> }          | we feeding you.       |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }       |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | (sing.)               |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | we feeding you.       |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | we feeding him.       |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | we feeding her.       |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | we feeding you. (pl.) |
| <b>ሙግናቸሁ:</b> }        | we feeding them.      |

Note.—Constructive Forms with the paragogic **ተ:** differ in nothing concerning the affixion of the Pronoun.

E. The Relative Participle treats the Suffixes like the Preterite Indicative and the Contingent.

2. *Forms with the Auxiliary ՚ ՚ ՚ : Infexion.*

## INDICATIVE.

## Present and Future.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR MASCULINE.

(See Contingent.)

**ՀՍՏՊՈՇԴ:** he feeds me.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎԴ:** } he feeds thee.**ՀՍՏՊՈՇԴ:** } he feeds you.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎԴ:** } he feeds him.**ՀՍՏՊՈՒԴ:** } he feeds her.**ՀՍՏՊՈՒԴ:** } he feeds us.**ՀՍՏՊՈՒՇԴ:** } he feeds you.**ՀՍՏՊՈՒՎԴ:** } he feeds them.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

**ՀՍՏՊՈՇԴ:** they feed me.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎԴ:** } they feed thee.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎՇԴ:** } they feed you.**ՀՍՏՊՈՒԴ:** } they feed him.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎՄԴ:** } they feed her.**ՀՍՏՊՈՒՄԴ:** } they feed us.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎՇՄԴ:** } they feed you.**ՀՍՏՊՈՎՄՎԴ:** } they feed them.

Masculine.

**ՄՏՊՐԾԴ:** he feeds (fed &c.) me.**ՄՏՊՐՎԴ:** } he feeds (fed &c.) thee.**ՄՏՊՐՌԴ:** } he feeds (fed &c.) you**ՄՏՊՐՎՇԴ:** } (s. hon.)**ՄՏՊՐԺԴ:** he feeds (fed &c.) him.**ՄՏՊՐՎԺԴ:** he feeds (fed &c.) her.**ՄՏՊՐՖԴ:** he feeds (fed &c.) us.**ՄՏՊՐՎՓԴ:** he feeds (fed &c.) you.**ՄՏՊՐՎՄՎԴ:** he feeds (fed &c.) them.

Masculine.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

**ՄՏՊՈՄՄԴ:** thou feedest me, &c.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

**ՄՏՊՎԿԱՄ:** I feed thee, &c.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

**ՄՏՊՎԿԱՌԴ:** you feed me.

## Constructive Aorist.

## THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

**ՄՏՊՐԾԼՇԴ:** she feeds me.**ՄՏՊՐՎԼՇԴ:** } she feeds thee.**ՄՏՊՐՌԼՇԴ:** } she feeds you.**ՄՏՊՐՎՇԼՇԴ:** } she feeds him.**ՄՏՊՐՎՄԼՇԴ:** } she feeds her.**ՄՏՊՐՎՇՄԼՇԴ:** } she feeds us.**ՄՏՊՐՎՄՎԼՇԴ:** } she feeds you.**ՄՏՊՐՎՄՎՄՎԼՇԴ:** } she feeds them.

Feminine.

**ՄՏՊՈՄՄԴ:** thou feedest me.

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

**ՄՏՊՈՅԿԱ:** we feed thee.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

**ՄՏՊՎԿԱՌԴ:** they feed me.

*Note.—The connexion of Negative as well as other Particles, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, will be noticed in the next Chapter.*

CHAP. V.  
ON THE ADVERBS.

1. The Amharic Adverbs are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*; and the Separable Adverbs are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The Simple Adverbs, again, are either *Original* or *Derived*. We have to consider, first, the *Simple Original* Adverbs.

2. The Simple Original Adverbs are to be subdivided into two classes; the first of which comprehends such Adverbs as express their ideas by themselves; the second, such as are usually connected with the Verbs አለ፡ “to say,” እቻ፡ “to do,” “to make,” “to induce.”

(a) *First Class.*

**ሙኑ፡** “when?”

**ስንት፡** “how much?” “how many?”

**ቀብ፡** “calmly,” “cautiously,” “quietly.”

**ብቶ፡** “but,” “only,” “singly.” Is used also with Suffixes in the Accusative: **ብቶዽ፡** “I alone.” **ብቶሁ፡** “thou alone,” &c.

**ተል፡** “quickly,” “speedily.”

**ተላለት፡** and **ተላለተ፡** “yesterday.”

**አገመ፡** “last year.”

**ዘጋጀ፡** “this year.”

**ነይ፡** “yet.” With neg. “not yet.”

**አሁን፡** “now.”

**አንተ፡ በንተ፡** Shoa, and Vulgar :

**አሁ፡** “indeed,” “even.”

**አንተ፡** “no!”

**አንድ፡** “but,” “except,” “not including.”

**አንድ፡** “I do not know.”

**አዎን፡** “yes!”

**ከተ፡** “thoroughly,” “wholly,” “fully.” With negative “never,” “nowhere,” “not at all.”

**ወተር፡** “always.”

**ዛረ፡** “to-day,” “now,” “at present.”

(b) *Second Class.*

PARTICLE

**ሙር፡** of leaping, jumping.

**ምር፡** of bitterness.

**ልግም፡** of carelessness, idleness, and eye-service.

**ሰጠጥ፡** of cracking.

**ሰራይ፡** of soaring.

**ሰተጥ፡** of gliding.

**ቀብ፡** of caution, silence.

INSTANCES.

**ሙር፡ ይለል፡** “he jumps.”

**ምር፡ አለ፡** “it was bitter.”

**ልግም፡ ይለል፡** “he acts carelessly,” “is an eye-servant.”

**ሰጠጥ፡ ይለል፡** “it cracks.”

**ሰራይ፡ ይለል፡** “it soars.”

**ሰተጥ፡ ይለል፡** “he slips.”

**ቀብ፡ ይለል፡** “he acts cautiously.”

|                                                   |                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>በልቻ</b> : of glimmering, glittering.           | <b>በልቻ</b> : <b>ደለል</b> : "it glimmers."                        |
| <b>ባተን</b> : of scattering.                       | <b>ባተን</b> : <b>ደለል</b> : "he scatters."                        |
| <b>ተሎ</b> : of celerity.                          | <b>ተሎ</b> : <b>ደለል</b> : "he does quickly."                     |
| <b>ተፋ</b> : of spitting from between<br>the lips. | <b>ተፋ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "he spat."                              |
| <b>ተል</b> : of neglect.                           | <b>ተል</b> : <b>ደለዋል</b> : "he neglects him."                    |
| <b>ሻልል</b> : of shouting.                         | <b>ሻልል</b> : <b>በል</b> : "shout!"                               |
| <b>ሻምበ</b> : of refusing.                         | <b>ሻምበ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "he refused."                          |
| <b>ሻሽ</b> : of compliance.                        | <b>ሻሽ</b> : <b>ደለል</b> : "he yields, "is willing."              |
| <b>ሻፍ</b> : of blowing, fanning.                  | <b>ሻፍ</b> : <b>በል</b> : "blow," "fan."                          |
| <b>ሻተት</b> : of fulness, completion.              | <b>ሻተት</b> : <b>ደለል</b> : "it is full," "done."                 |
| <b>ሻፍ</b> : of highness, elevation.               | <b>ሻፍ</b> : <b>እደረገ</b> : "he raised," "elevated," "made high." |
| <b>ዘም</b> : of silence.                           | <b>ዘም</b> : <b>ሻነታዎች</b> :: "he silenced him."                  |
| <b>ዘቅ</b> : of lowness.                           | <b>ዘቅ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "he was low," "stooped."                |
| <b>ዘላግ</b> : of tallness, &c.                     | <b>ዘላግ</b> : <b>ደለል</b> : "he is tall and stout."               |
| <b>ዘሰ</b> : of joy.                               | <b>ዘሰ</b> : <b>ሻነታዎች</b> : "he rejoiced,"<br>"pleased him."     |
| <b>ደሬ</b> : of slipperiness.                      | <b>ደሬ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "it was slippery."                      |
| <b>ገመጫ</b> : of celerity.                         | <b>ገመጫ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "he went quickly."                     |
| <b>ይ</b> : of completion.                         | <b>ይ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "it was full," "entire."                 |
| <b>ማቅ</b> : of spitting through the teeth.        | <b>ማቅ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "he spat thro' the teeth."              |
| <b>ያጥ</b> : of silence, subsiding.                | <b>ያጥ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "it became quiet."                      |
| <b>ፈጥቶ</b> : of moving forwards.                  | <b>ፈጥቶ</b> : <b>ሻለ</b> : "he proceeded," "went<br>further."     |
| <b>ይግምባ</b> : of gliding.                         | <b>ይግምባ</b> : <b>እደረገ</b> : "he made to<br>glide."              |

Most of these particles seem to be originally intended for mere expressions of the natural sound of certain actions. Such is decidedly the case in **በልጥጥ**: **ተፋ**: **ማቅ**: **ሻለል**: **ሻፍ**: **የለ**: And their connexion with **ሻለ**: "to say," giving the idea that e.g. "to crack" is "to say *sif'it*"; to spit," is "to say *teff*" or "*tsh'ek*"; "to shout" is "to say *ellel*" (as is really the custom in the East \*); "to blow" is "to say *eff*"; could lead us to rank the whole of this class rather with the Interjections, but that their connection with Verbs prohibits us, though several of these Particles are Interjections as well as Adverbs.

\* See, in the Amharic Dictionary, **ሻልል**:

3. *Simple Derived Adverbs* are very numerous. They are derived from Nouns (Adjective and Substantive), and Verbs, and at least one Pronoun. Those derived from Nouns are not changed in form, but in the sense. Perhaps they may be considered as Accusatives, or having the Preposition **Ո:** omitted. Such Nominal Adverbs are the following:

## ORIGINAL SUBSTANTIVES.

|               |                         |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| <b>ՄԱՐ:</b>   | { "outside," "abroad,"  |
|               | "within."               |
| <b>ՆԵՐ:</b>   | "to-morrow."            |
| <b>ՄԵԼԻՐ:</b> | "early in the morning." |
| <b>ՔԵՐԴՄ:</b> | "before," "previously." |

## ORIGINAL ADJECTIVES.

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ՄԵԼԻՐՄ:</b> | "well," "properly."   |
| <b>ՔԵՐ:</b>    | "near."               |
| <b>ԹՃ:</b>     | "badly."              |
| <b>ՔՍԴ:</b>    | "well," "safely."     |
| <b>ՏԱՐՎ:</b>   | "largely," "greatly." |
| <b>ԿԱՐՎ:</b>   | "much," "very."       |

Besides these, perhaps every other Adjective may be used adverbially.

## Simple Adverbs derived from Verbs:

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| <b>ՀԵԶԱԼՄ:</b> | "no."                    |
| <b>ՔՍԴ:</b>    | "nearly," "about."       |
| <b>ՔՃՎ:</b>    | "more" ( <i>magis</i> ). |

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>ՔՓԸ:</b>      | Particle of forgiveness; e.g. |
| <b>ՔՓԸ: ՔՃՎ:</b> | "he forgives."                |

|               |                         |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| <b>ՃՊՎԾ:</b>  | "more."                 |
| <b>ՄԵԼԻՐ:</b> | "again."                |
| <b>ՄԵԼԻՐ:</b> | "early in the morning." |
| <b>ՔԵՐ:</b>   | "near."                 |
| <b>ՊՈՅ:</b>   | "saying," "thinking."   |
| <b>ՀՊԸ:</b>   | "together."             |
| <b>ԱՌՎԾ:</b>  | "beginning."            |
| <b>ԴՀԸ:</b>   | "wanting," "but."       |
| <b>ՀԱՐՎ:</b>  | "doing."                |

## Adverbs of uncertain origin are:

**ՈՒՋ:** (Shoa, ՊՈՅ: and ՊՈՅՇ: ) "readily," "with pleasure!"

4. Compound Adverbs are formed, (a) by Prepositions and Nouns; (b) by Prepositions and Pronouns; (c) by Nouns and Nouns; (d) by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.

(a) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Nouns.*

**ՈՓՄԴ:** { "internally," "within,"  
"inside."

**ՈՊԾՃ:** { "externally," "without,"  
"outside."

**ՈՔՄԲ:** { "well," "safely," "in

**ՈՔՄՑԱՌ:** { "health," "successfully"

**ՈՄՓԴ:** { "by little," "in a low  
degree."

**ՈՄՓԴ:** ՈՄՓԴ: { "by little and  
little," "gradually."

**ՈՔՎ:** { "in a high degree," "in a  
great measure."

**ՈՎԵՒ:** { "with measure," "moder-  
ately."

**ՈԵԼԿՄ:** { "with fear," "fearfully,"  
"shyly," "cowardly."

**ՈՔՎԵՌ:** { "boldly," "courage-  
ously."

**ՈՔՇԵ:** "joyfully."

**ՈԽԵՎՈ:** { "from the heart,"  
"heartily."

**ՈՃՔԲ:** "willingly."

**ՈՀՄՋԸ:** { "rationally," "reason-  
ably."

**ՈՄՑԱՌ:** "kindly."

**ՈՊՄՎՀԴ:** { "graciously," "mer-  
cifully."

**ՈՎԵՒ:** "before," "previously."

**ՈՄՓԴ:** "in the morning."

**ՈՓԴՑ:** "at noon."

**ՈՎԵՐ:** "in the evening."

**ՈՎԵՆ:** { "at night."

**ԻՔԸ:** "from time immemorial."

**ՈՎԵՂ:** "after," "afterwards."

**ՈՓԵՐՄ:** "before."

**ՈՎԵՐՓ:** "afar off," "at a distance."

**ՈՎԵՆՔ:** "below."

**ԻՈՎԵՂ:** "from below."

**ՈՎԵՐԸ:** "above."

**ՈՎԵՐԸ:** "from above."

**ՈՎԵՐՄ:** "entirely."

**ՈՎԵՐՈՂ:** "for ever."

**ԻՈՎԵՆ:** { "from before," "from a  
former time."

**ԻՈՎԵՐԸ:** "from above."

**ԻՈՎԵՆՔ:** "from below."

(b) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Pronouns.*

**ՈՒՅ:** (Shoa, ՈՐՅ: ) { "here,"  
& ՈՒՅ: ) { "herein."

**ԻՒՅ:** (Shoa, ԻՐՅ: ) { "here,"  
& ՈՒՅ: ) { "from here,"  
"hence."

**ՈՔԻՅ:** { (Shoa,  
**ՈՔՇՅ:** { ՈՔՇՅ: ) { "hither."  
ՈՔՅ: { & ՍԻՅ: )

**ՆՅՇԻՅ:** { "so," "thus."

**ՆՅՇՅ:** "henceforth," "hence."

**ՈՒՐ:** (Shoa, ՈՐ: ) { "there,"  
& ՈՒՐ: ) { "therein."

**ԻՒՐ:** (Shoa, ՍԻՐ: ) { "there,"  
"from there,"  
"thence."

**ՈՔԻՐ:** { "thither," "after,"

**ՈՔՇՐ:** { "beyond."

**ՆՈՒԻՐ:** { "so far."

**ՆՈՄԻՐ:** { }

**ԻՒՐ: ՈՔՇՐ:** "afterwards."

|                                                |                               |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>ԻՆԴԵՍ:</b> <b>ՈՃԱ:</b> { “from henceforth.” | <b>ՀՅԱԺ:</b> “how?”           |
| <b>ՀՈՒԽԱՅ:</b> { “so far,” “as far as          | <b>ՀՅԱՃ:</b> “to be sure!”    |
| <b>ՀՈՒԹԱՅ:</b> } this,” “up to this.”          | <b>ՈՌԵՐ:</b> “after.”         |
| <b>ՈՐԴ:</b> } “where?”                         | <b>ՈՎԵՑ:</b> “why?”           |
| <b>ՈՔԴ:</b> } “whence?” “where-                | <b>ՈՄԵՅԲԸ:</b> “wherefore?”   |
| <b>ԻՈՔԴ:</b> } from?”                          | <b>ՈՂԱ: ՊԵՂ:</b> “on what ac- |
|                                                | ount?”                        |

(c) *Adverbs formed by Nouns (Pronouns, Numerals) and Nouns.*

|                                                |                                         |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>ՈՂԴԻ:</b> <b>ՈՂԴԻ:</b> { “every day,”       | <b>ՄՈՂԻ:</b> { “always,” “continually,” |
|                                                | “constantly.”                           |
| <b>ՀԱ:</b> <b>ՀԱ:</b> { “mouth to mouth,” i.e. | <b>ՀՅԱԳԻ:</b> “once.” (See Numerals.)   |
| “by word of mouth,”                            |                                         |
| “vivā voce.”                                   |                                         |
| <b>ԱՐԴԻ:</b> <b>ԱՐԴԻ:</b> { “opposite,” “over  | <b>ՐԻՎԻ:</b> <b>ԼԻ:</b> { “then,”       |
| against each other.”                           | “at that time.”                         |
|                                                | <b>ՊՄԸՆԴԻ:</b> “perhaps.”               |

(d) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.*

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>ՈՉ.ՈՒ:</b> “by the head-side.” | <b>ՈՎՈՒ:</b> “by the foot-side.”  |
| <b>ՈՅ.ՈՒ:</b> “by the hand-side.” | <b>ՈՋՈՒ:</b> “near the door,” &c. |

5. *Inseparable Adverbs* are but few.

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| <b>Հ—:</b>    |          |
| <b>ՀԱ—ՊԱ:</b> | { “not.” |
| <b>Հ—ՊԱ:</b>  |          |

**ՀԱ—:** non—, un—, in—, &c. **ՀՊ—:** Distributive Particle.

—**Ց:** Interrogative Particle.

The *Negative Particles* **Հ—:** **ՀԱ—ՊԱ:** and **Հ—ՊԱ:** are joined to the Finite Verb. **ՀԱ—ՊԱ:** is used throughout the Preterite, and with the 1st pers. sing. of the Present Tense. In the other personal forms, the **Ա:** is ejected, and **Հ—ՊԱ:** remains. The mere **Հ—:** is used in the Subjunctive, and in all cases where the Negative Verb receives any additional Prefixes; e.g.

P<sup>R</sup>E<sup>T</sup>E<sup>R</sup>ITE.

**ՀԱԾՍԴԳՄ:** "he came not."  
**ՀԱԾՍԴՐԴՄ:** "she came not."  
**ՀԱԾՍԴԵԳՄ:** "thou (m.) camest  
**ՀԱԾՍԴՐԴՄ:** "thou (f.) not."  
**ՀԱԾՍԴԱ-ԴՄ:** "I came not."  
**ՀԱԾՍԴՈ-ԴՄ:** "they } came  
**ՀԱԾՍԴՐԱ-ԴՄ:** "you } not."  
**ՀԱԾՍԴԵ-ԴՄ:** "we }

S<sup>B</sup>U<sup>J</sup>N<sup>C</sup>U<sup>T</sup>V<sup>I</sup>E<sup>T</sup>.

**ՀՃԹՈ:** "let him not come."  
**ՀԴԴՈ:** "let her not come."  
**ՀԴԴՈ:** m. } "do not thou come."  
**ՀԴԴՈ:** f. } "do not thou come."  
**ՀՃԹՈ:** "do not you (hon.)  
**ՀԴԴՈ:** } come."  
**ՂԱԾՍԴ:** "I must not come."  
**ՀՃԹՈ:** "let them not come."  
**ՀԴԴՈ:** "do ye not come."  
**ԱՅՍՈ:** "let us not come."

P<sup>R</sup>E<sup>S</sup>ENT I<sup>D</sup>IC<sup>A</sup>T<sup>I</sup>V<sup>E</sup>.

**ՀՃՍԾՈԴՄ:** "he } does not  
**ՀԴԴԾՈԴՄ:** "she } come."  
**ՀԴԴԾՈԴՄ:** } "thou dost not  
**ՀԴԴԾՈԸԴՄ:** } come."  
**ՀԱԾՍԴԳՄ:** "I \*"  
**ՀՃՍԾՈ-ԴՄ:** "they } do not  
**ՀԴԴԾՈ-ԴՄ:** "you } come."  
**ՀԿԾՍԾՈԴՄ:** "we }

*With additional Prefixes, which absorb  
the Հ::*

**ՊՃԽԱ-Բ:** "if he do not go."  
**ԲԾԳԴԾՈ-ՈՒ:** { "(thou) who doest  
not return."  
**ՀԿՃՐՃԾԿ:** { "that thou mayest  
not do."  
**ՊՃՈՒ:** { "without (his) eating,"  
or "before he eats."  
**ՂԱԾՊԸԸ:** "before I learn."

**ՀՈ—:** is prefixed to Infinitives; e.g. **ՀԼԱԾՎՈՒ:** "ignorance," i.e. the not knowing, non-intelligence. **ՀԼԱԾՎՄՆ:** "unbelief." **ՀԼԱԾՄԴԻՒ:** "disobedience," "insubordination," &c.

—Շ: (in Shoa —ՓՇ:) is a Particle of Interrogation, and affixed to any part of speech; e.g. **ՔՄՇ:** ԿԱՇ: "Art thou well?" **ԴՀՇԻՇ:** ՔՄՇ: ՀՃՇ: "Has he done this?"

## CHAP. VI.

## ON THE PREPOSITIONS, OR PARTICLES OF RELATION.

1. The term "Prepositions" for that part of speech which falls under the consideration of this Chapter, is not entirely suitable. It is a class which determines the relation between Nouns, Pronouns, or Verbs; and which, because in our European languages they are generally placed *before* the

\* Mark the difference in pronunciation of the 1st pers. Present from the 3d pers. Preterite. The latter is pronounced "Almat'am"; the former "Alémat'am." In the 3d pers. sing. of the Preterite, the Ճ: is mute; but in the 1st pers. sing. of the Present, it is sounded, because in the latter the Preformative Հ: which the Ճ: absorbs, must be heard.

object of relation, have been called Prepositions, but would be better called *Particles of Relation*; as this term would suit also in cases where the Particle is placed behind its object.

2. The Amharic Particles of Relation are partly *Simple*, partly *Compound*. The Simple ones are always *Pre-positions*; the Compound ones consist of *Pre-* and *Postpositions*. The Simple Prepositions are either Separable or Inseparable. The *Simple Separable Prepositions* are the following:

**ስለ**: "for," "for the sake of," "in behalf," "instead of," "in favour of," "because," "on account of," "concerning," "on."

**ወደ**: "to," "towards."

**ምል**: "without."

**ካንድ**: "as," "like as," "according to," "in proportion to."

**ከስተ**: "to," "up to," "reaching to," "till," "until."

*Inseparable Prepositions* are, **አ—፡ በ—፡ ክ—፡ ተ—፡ ጥ—፡** or **በ—፡ እየ—፡**

**አ—**: "to," "unto," "in favour of," "to the benefit of," "belonging to."

**በ—**: "in," "on," "upon," "at," "by," "through," "with," "against," "for (in exchange)," "over."

**ኋ—**: "of," "out of," "from," "(more) than," "to."

**ቻ—**: "with (company)."

**ጥ—**: or **ሁ—**: vulgar, instead of **ኋ—**: and of **በ—**:

**እየ—**: "in proportion to," "according to," &c., and Distributive.

Illustrations of the preceding Simple Prepositions.

(a) **ስለ**: **እግዢለብኩር**: "For God's sake."

**ስለ**: **ጃጠት**: **እሞታለሁ**: "I die *on account* (because) of my sins."

**ስለንት**: **ሙጣ**: "He came *on thy account*."

**ስለ**: **ወደዴ**: **ያደክማል**: "He labours *for* (in behalf of) his friend."

**ስለ**: **ምንድር**: "wherefore?"

**ይህቅ**: **ምዕራፍ**: **ስለ**: **የደመቀጥ**: **ተፍገራለቅ**: "This chapter treats *on* faith."

(b) **ካንድ**: **ስወ**: "as a man," "according to (the manner of) men."

**ካንድ**: **እጥረሰ**: "like as," or "resembling Peter."

**ካንድ**: **ፈወ**: **ያደርጋል**: "He does *according to* his will," ("as he likes").

**ካንድ**: **ንደሳ**: "In proportion to his strength."

(c) **ወደ**: **ሐበሻ**: **ሐይ**: "He went *to* Abyssinia."

**እተን**: **ወደሸጥ**: **እደረገ**: "He set his face *towards* him."

(d) እስከ: (sometimes እስተ): is seldom used without a following ደረሰ:; but sometimes it is used by itself; e.g.

እስከ: ቴንደር: ይመሬል: "It goes *as far as* Gondar," ("up to Gondar").

(e) ሌ—: is used as a Universal Dative; e.g.

ለት: በወው: "He gave it *to* me."

ለት: ንዑ: "It belongs *to* me."

ለምና: (ለምናይር): "what *for*?" ("wherfore?")

ለክልች: signifies both "send *to* me," and "send *for* me," (in my favour, or behalf, to somebody else).

(f) በበት: "in the house."

በኢየዘድብበር: የምናል: "He believes *in* God."

በወጻድ: የስተዋሚል: "He teaches (*in*) the Gospel."

በጥቅም: "in the morning."

በቀጥር: "at noon."

በወያድር: "on earth," "on the ground."

በድንገት: "on a sudden."

በሎንዶንድ: "at (in) London."

በድቃ: "at the door."

ቁጥጥ: በყድመጥጥ: ያደኝል: "The just shall live *by* faith."

በባሕር: በምድር: "By sea and *by* land."

በሙያስተኛለት: በክርስቲስ: "Through him that strengtheneth me; through Christ."

በወጪቂቂ: በጠር: ገዢዑ: "With gold and *with* silver did he purchase it."

ቁጥጥ: መጠበች: "My enemy came *upon* (against) me."

የፈረደበታል: "He judges *over* him" (or, in contrast with —ለ—: "pronounces judgment *against*, condemns him.")

የቁጥጥ: በእኔ: በቁጥጥ: ያለውና: "Forgive us that which is *against* us;" i.e., "forgive us our debts," Matt. vi. 12.

በስራስት: ባር: ይሻመዋል: "He sells it *for* six dollars."

የል: ነሱት: "He gained the victory *over* him."

(g) ክበቅ: ወጥ: "He went *out of* his house."

ነፍስ: ወስድሆት: "I took it *from* him."

ነኬ: ይበልጣል: "He is greater *than* I."

ነፍስ: ያንተል: "He is inferior *to* him."

(h, i) Τ: and η: or Υ: are frequently used in vulgar, but not in good language. (See the Dictionary.)

(k) ΚΡ—: is a Preposition, Distributive and of Proportion. It is related to ΚΩΣ: and has been mentioned already with the Numerals as a Distributive Particle. Other instances are these: ΚΡΗΣΟΥ: "according to its kind." ΚΡΑΙΚΟΥΤ: "in his respective order."

3. The Compound Particles of Relation are formed by any of the Simple Prepositions, connected with Nouns, or other Particles. The latter (Postpositions) are either directly joined to the former, or follow after the Noun or Pronoun to which they refer. We shall first give here a list of Postpositions; then show how they are combined with Simple Prepositions; and afterwards exhibit their use, by expressions of daily occurrence in conversation.

*List of Postpositions.*

ΦΛΗΤ: "the inside."

ΧΛ: "what is behind."

ΛΡ: "high," "upper," "elevated."

ΔΤ: "face," "fore-part," "surface."

ΤΝ: "that which is below."

ΛΠΛΟ: "the side."

ΜΤΗΓΑ: "the middle."

Η-ΛΡ: "surrounding place."

ΛΖΑ: "front."

ΗΖΑ: } particles of company.  
ΖΔ: }

ΔΖΗ: particle of extent.

ΜΤΗ: "proportion."

ΔΗ: "measure."

ΠΦΔ: particle of omission.

ΖΤΔ: "equal," "equality."

ΜΤΗΖΡΤ: "reason," "cause."

ΔΖΤ: "portion," "stead," "part."

They are thus combined with Simple Prepositions:

ΠΦΛΗΤ: and Π—: ΦΛΗΤ: "within," "inside."

ΠΤΔ: "about," "in the vicinity," "direction."

ΠΗ-ΛΡ: and Π—: Η-ΛΡ: "surrounding," "round about."

ΠΔΤ: "before," "previous to," "in sight of," "in front of."

ΠΖΔ: and Ζ—: ΠΖΔ: "behind," "after."

ΠΤΝ: and Τ—: ΠΤΝ: "below," "under."

Π—: ΗΖΑ: "by," "with."

Ζ—: ΗΖΑ: "from," "from with."

ΖΠΗ: —: ΔΖΗ: "till," "up to," "to," "as far as."

Π—: ΔΗ: "in proportion to."

ΠΜΤΗΖΡΤ: and Π—ΜΤΗΖΡΤ: "for the sake of," "on account of," "because of."

**ՈՂՋ:** and **Ի—:** **ՈՂՋ:** "on," "upon," "above," "over," "against."  
**ԴԹՂԴ:** "beside," "by."  
**ՈՄՄԴԴԱ:** and **Ո—:** **ՄՄԴԴԱ:** "among," "between."  
**Ի—:** **ԵՃ:** "with," "together with."  
**ՈՄՄԴ:** and **Ո—:** **ՄՄԴ:** "in proportion to."  
**Ի—:** **ՈՓԸ:** "without," "excepting."  
**Ո—:** **ՃՅԴ:** "instead of."  
**ԴՅՑԸ:** and **Ո—:** **ՀՅՑԸ:** "in front of," "opposite."

Instances for illustration :

**ՈՓՄՊ:** "*within him.*"  
**ԴՂԸ:** **ՓՄՊ:** "*within the country.*"  
**ՈՂՉՅՆ:** **ՈՒՐԴ:** "*in the vicinity of London.*"  
**ԻՓԻԸ:** **ՈՎՃ:** "*after midday,*" i.e. "*in the afternoon.*"  
**ՈՒՐԴԴ:** "*under us.*"  
**ԻՌՋՓ:** **ՈՄՔ:** "*under the table.*"  
**ՈՒ:** **ԽՅԲ:** "*with or by me.*"  
**ԻՆԺՓ:** **ԽՅԲ:** **ՄՄԴ:** "*He came from (from with) his master.*"  
**ՆՈՒՐ:** **ԿՃ:** **ՔՃՐ:** "*to this day.*"  
**ՆՈՒՐ:** **ԿՃ:** **ՔՃՐ:** "*till to-morrow.*"  
**ՈՒՐ:** **ՃԻ:** "*in that measure,*" i.e. so large &c. as that.  
**ՈՄՄԴՅՐԴՄ:** "*on thy account," "for thy sake.*"  
**ՈՎՃ:** **ՄՄԴ:** "*because of his son.*"  
**ՈՒՀԸՓՈ:** "*round about him.*"  
**ԴՂԸ:** **ԽՀԸ:** "*in the environs of (round about) the town.*"  
**ՈՎՃԴՓ:** **մԵՋ:** "*he went before them.*"  
**ՈՄՋԸ:** **ՃԵ:** "*on the earth.*"  
**ԻՌԴ:** **ՈՂՋ:** "*above his house.*"  
**ՈՈՒՃ:** **ՀԹՂԴ:** "*by the side of the place.*"  
**ՈՅԴՄ:** **ՃԵ:** **ՏԿՎ:** "*He rose against the king.*"  
**ՈՈՓՔ:** **ՄՄԴԴԱ:** "*among men.*"  
**ՈՒՐ:** **ՈԸՐ:** **ՄՄԴԴԱ:** "*between me and him.*"  
**ԻՌԴ:** **ԵՃ:** **մԵՋ:** "*He went with his father.*"  
**ՈՓՓԻ:** **ՄՄԴ:** "*in proportion to his knowledge.*"  
**Ս-ԼԴՓ:** **ԻԸՐԻ:** **ՈՓԸ:** **ՔՔՃԸՐ:** "*They all write excepting him.*"  
**ՈՒ:** **ՃՅԴ:** **ՃՓՈՂՓԸ:** "*He receives it, instead of me.*"  
**ՈՈՒ:** **ՀՅՑԸ:** "*opposite the house.*"

## CHAP. VII.

## ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The *Amharic Conjunctions* are either Separable or Inseparable.

2. The *Separable Conjunctions* are as follows:

(a) *Copulative*, and *Reiterative*: ይግባ፡ “also,” “again.”

(b) *Adversative*, ተን፡ “however,” “but.”

|                                                |                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ኋር፡</b><br><b>ነጋ፡ ተን፡</b><br><b>ኋር፡ ተን፡</b> | <b>ኋይቀር፡</b> { “ notwithstanding,”<br>“ nevertheless.”<br><b>ኋንጂ፡</b> “but,” “unless.” |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

(c) *Disjunctive*:

|                                                  |                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ወያ፡</b><br><b>ወያም፡</b> { “or.”<br><b>ወያስ፡</b> | <b>ወይስ፡—፡</b> <b>ወይስ፡—፡</b> “either—,” “or—”;<br>with Negation, “neither.” |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

(d) *Causal*: እንደ፡ “that.” እንደ፡ “in order that,” “in order to.”

(e) *Conditional*, እንደሁን፡ (Shoa, እንዳ፡) “if.”

(f) *Conclusive*, በላይ፡ “therefore.”

3. The *Inseparable Conjunctions* are these:

(a) *Copulative*, —ቁ፡ —ቁ፡ “and,” “also.”

ከ—፡ ተ—፡ “and,” “by,” (in counting).

(b) *Copulative and Adversative* :—ስ፡—ስ፡ “as for,” “but,” “indeed,” “but.”

(c) *Conditional*:

|                                                |                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ብ—፡</b><br><b>ከ—፡</b> { “if.”<br><b>ብ—፡</b> | With the Negative እ፡ (በ፡) “if not,” “unless.”<br> |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|

(d) *Conjunction of time*, ስ—፡ “when,” “while.”

Negat. ተ—፡ “ere,” “before,” “without.”

(e) *Final and Conditional*: እንደ፡—፡ “that,” “if,” “to.”  
አ—፡ “that,” “in order that.”

(f) *Intensive*, እስከ፡—፡ “so that,” “so as to.”

እስከ፡—፡ ይረዳ፡ “until,” “till.”

(g) *Comparative*, ከ—፡ “than that.”

(h) *Causal*, —ቁ፡ “for,” “because.”

**Note.**—The junction of these Particles to Verbs is effected according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII.

## ILLUSTRATIONS:

**ՑԴՄՏ:** ՑՊՄՏ: ՄՍՈՒ: ԺԵՐՊԱ: "The king *and* the queen came *and* went."

**ՔԸ:** ՈՂՋԵՐԾՈՒ: ՏՓՄՍՈՒ: "But their servants remained"; or,  
ՈՂՋԵՐԾՈՒ: ԴՅ: ՏՓՄՍՈՒ::

**ՄՍԴ:** ԻԳՏՈՒ: "One hundred and fifty."

**ՆՀՈՒ:** ՃՊՎՈ: ԿՇՋԱ: ՀՈՒ: "He *also* told me so."

**ՔՄ:** ՄՈՒ: ՂԵՓԸ: "Notwithstanding all this."

**ՔՄԴ:** ՀԱԼԻՄ: ՔԻՅ: ԿՇՋԱ: "I do not want this, *but* that."

**ԳՄԴՆ:** ՏԿՃԵԱՍ: ՄՍՃԽԾՅ: ՓԵՌՈՒ: ՈՒՅՅ: "What doest thou want, the book *or* the money?"

**ՓԵՌՈՒ:** ՔՄԴՅ: ՓԵՌՈՒ: ՔՄԴՅ: ԾԴՔԸՎՈՒ: "Either this *or* that must thou do (art thou *to* do)."

**ՆՀՈՒՈՒ:** ԿՇՋԱ: ԺԵՐԱ: ՀԲՍՒ: ԽԸ: ԴՅ: ԱՀՏ: ԿՇԺԵՒՈՒ: ՀԱՄՔՄՈՒ: "Indeed, that he has gone, I have seen; *but* in order that thou shouldst be lazy, he did not go," ("was not his object in going").

**ՆՄՎԸ:** ԿՇՋԱ: (or ՃՊՎԸ:) ՆՈՋՃԱՍ: "I like *to* learn."

**ՄՍՃԽԾՅ:** ԴՐՅ: ՈՓԵՔԸՄ: "I should like *to* get a book."

**ՈՒՄՎՈՒ:** ՈՒՄՎՀ: ՋՌԱՎԱ: "If thou learnest, that will be better for thee *than if* thou playest."

**ԱՀՏ:** ՈՒՄՎՈՒ: ՆՀՈՒ: ՈՌՈՍ: ՆՈՅ: "If thou wouldest ask, he would give thee."

**ՆՄՓՈՒ:** ՈՓՄՍՈՒ: ՈՂՋ: ՔԵՐԾԱ: "While the master remains, the servant goes."

**ՀՈՒԽՄՈՒ:** ԲՀԱՌՈՒ: ՓԵՌՈՒ: "Wait for me *till* I come."

**ՄՍԹՈՒՈՒ:** ԿՄՎՈՒՄ: "As for coming, I shall come."

**ԱՀՏՈՒ:** "But thou?" (emphatic, "what wilt thou do?")

**ԴՄՎՓՃ:** ԿՔՄՍՈՒՄ: "Because he is sick, he does not come."



## CHAP. VIII.

## ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

1. We notice first those Particles which, when combined with the Verbs **ՀՂ**: հղդու: and **ՀՈՒ**: հուն:, constitute Verbs (See Ch. V. 2.); but when used by themselves, are Interjections. They are the following:

| Particles    | Signification. | Particles                           | Signification. |                |                          |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| <b>ԿՂՄ</b> : | of silence,    | { "tush!"<br>"quiet!"               | <b>ՀՈՒ</b> :   | of compliance, | { "yes,"<br>"readily."   |
| <b>ՓՈ</b> :  | of caution,    | { "mind!"<br>"softly!"              | <b>ՀՊՄՈ</b> :  | of refusing,   | "I will not!"            |
| <b>ԴՈ</b> :  | of haste,      | "quickly!"                          | <b>ՀԱՃ</b> :   | of exultation, | { "hurrah!"<br>"huzzah!" |
| <b>ԴՐԴ</b> : | of completion  | { "done!"<br>"finished!"<br>"full!" |                |                |                          |

2. The remaining Particles of Exclamation are as follows:

|               |                                               |                                                                                                                                                     |                |                                   |                               |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>ՄՔ</b> :   | of address,                                   | "oh!"                                                                                                                                               | <b>ՀՔ</b> :    | { of commis-<br>ration,           | "oh!"                         |
| <b>ՓՈ</b> :   | of expulsion,                                 | "begone!"                                                                                                                                           | <b>ՈՊ</b> :    | { of lamentation,                 | { "alas!"<br>"woe!"           |
| <b>ՀՈՅՔ</b> : | of joy,                                       | "eh!" "aha!"                                                                                                                                        | <b>ՊՔ</b> :    | { of lamentation<br>& abhorrence, | { "woe!"<br>"alas!"<br>"fie!" |
| <b>ՀԽՄ</b> :  | of attention,                                 | { "look!"<br>"behold!"                                                                                                                              | <b>ԾԹ-Ռ</b> :  | { of astro-<br>nishment,          | { "oh wonder!"<br>"dear me!"  |
| <b>ՀՀԴ</b> :  | { contradiction,<br>complaint,<br>abhorrence, | { "oh!"<br>"far be it!"<br>"fie!"                                                                                                                   | <b>ՈՔ: ԴՔ:</b> |                                   |                               |
| <b>ՀՈՒ</b> :  | { of courtesy,<br>of address,                 | { "Sir!"<br>"O Lord!"                                                                                                                               |                |                                   |                               |
| <b>ՀԻ</b> :   | { of assent,                                  | { "to be sure!"<br>"no doubt!"                                                                                                                      |                |                                   |                               |
| <b>ՈՒԿ</b> :  | { of sudden<br>sympathy,                      | { "I hope you have not hurt yourself!" lit. "substi-<br>tute," i.e. I should have preferred the accident to<br>have happened to me, instead of you! |                |                                   |                               |

## PART III.—SYNTAX.

ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS,  
AND THEIR  
CONSTRUCTION INTO SENTENCES.~~~~~  
CHAP. I.ON THE NATURE OF SENTENCES, ESPECIALLY IN THE AMHARIC  
LANGUAGE.

1. A *sentence* is an aggregate of words expressing a judgment of the mind. It is either simple, complex, or compound. The constituent parts of every sentence are, a subject, an attribute, a copula, and an object; the latter, however, being less necessary than the three former. *Simple* sentences are such as have nothing but these parts; *e.g.*

**ጥዕር:** ተሸ: **ፍት:** “The earth is spacious.”

**ኩጂው:** **ሙበት:** “The king has come.”

**እንበት:** **እረብን:** **ገዢለ:** “The lion killed a horse.”

NOTE.—The Copula, or Joining Verb, which connects the subject with the attribute, is frequently joined with the latter in one and the same verb; *e.g.* **ኩጂው:** **ሙበት::** Here **ሙበት:** contains the attribute of **ኩጂው:** (“king”), which is, “one that came,” together with the Copulative Verb “is.”

2. *Complex* sentences are such as are amplified by qualifying words in connection with either the subject or the attribute; *e.g.*

**አቶ:** **ኩረ:** **ሙበት:** “My son came to-day.”

Here is the subject, **አቶ:** “son,” qualified by the pronoun *ቴ*, “my,” and the attribute “who came,” (contained in the verb **ሙበት:** “came,” with the copula “is,”) by the adverb **ኩረ:** “to-day.”

3. Compound sentences are such as have either the subject, or the attribute, or the object, or all of them, augmented by additional or explanatory parts; *e.g.*

**ወጥረፍች:** **ነገድ:** **ገባሪያ:** **የመጠቅምት:** **ስዎቻ:** **ፍተዎ:**

“The soldier, the merchant, and the farmer, are useful men.”

## CHAP. II.

## ON THE SUBJECT AND THE ATTRIBUTE, AND THEIR RELATION TO EACH OTHER.

SECTION I.—*On the Subject.*

1. The *subject* is the principal or the reigning part of every sentence : it therefore stands always in the *Nominative Case*: e.g.

**ነወ፡ ይሞትል፡** “man dies.”

2. The ideal subject is always a Noun Substantive: the grammatical subject may be a Substantive, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, an Infinitive, or Participle: for words which express no perfect ideas by themselves, i.e. which are not substances, cannot form subjects of thought, unless they be at least ideally converted into substantives.

3. In every sentence, the subject precedes; the attribute and the copula follow ; e.g.

**እርዃ፡ ይህ፡ ነወ፡** “He is good.”

This is always the case, whether the Subject be simple, defined, complex, or compound.

4. When the Subject is specified by a Substantive, an Adjective, a Numeral, Pronoun, or Participle, the specifying words precede ; e.g.

**የነወ፡ ሰብ፡ ክፍ፡ ነወ፡** “Man’s heart is evil.”

**በት፡ ነወ፡ ይከተሉል፡** “A good man is honoured.”

**ስባት፡ ቅድ፡ እስዳ፡** “Seven days passed.”

**ይህ፡ በታ፡ ሰብ፡ ነወ፡** “This house is spacious.”

**የተወለ፡ በታ፡ ሰብ፡ ነወ፡ ነወ፡** “The house which has been built, is spacious.”

**አግዴአብዕርን፡ መፍራት፡ ከላጊት፡ ገዢ፡ ይህን፡**

“ May the fear of the Lord be with you.”—2 Chron. xix. 7.

5. A Compound Subject, which consists of several Nouns, Numerals, or Pronouns, has all these parts in the Nominative Case ; e.g.

**ስምዕያ፡ ፍዔድር፡ ያልፈል፡** “Heaven and earth shall pass away.”

**አሳያ፡ መቶ፡ ከሳሙኑያ፡ ስወቻ፡ አይ፡** “Those hundred and eighty men have gone.”

6. Where the Subject is connected with subordinate explanatory parts, it follows after them ; e.g. Luke xii. 47.

**የኢትዎን፡ ፈቃድ፡ አውቀ፡ የልተዘጋጅ፡ እናደ፡ ፈቃድም፡**  
**ያለፈረን፡ ገርሞ፡ እናገ፡ ይገረፈል፡**

Literally: "His Lord's will knowing who prepared not himself, according to his will and did not the servant, much shall be scourged;" i.e. "That servant who knew his Lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be severely scourged."

These two rules, No. 4, and 6, are so peculiarly in the Amharic idiom, that they cannot fail to impress themselves at once upon the mind of the Student.

---

## SECTION II.

*On the Attribute, and its relations to the Subject.*

1. The Attribute may be a Substantive, or an Adjective, or Pronoun, or Participle: it may be separate, or implied in the Verb.

### EXAMPLES.

**እግዢአብአር፡ መንፈስ፡ ካወ፡** "God is a Spirit."

**ያህ፡ በወ፡ አዋቅ፡ ካወ፡** "This man is intelligent."

**ዝኑ፡ ደህ፡ ካወ፡** "The matter is this."

**ፈቃድ፡ የተዋሪዎ፡ ካወ፡** "His resolution is decided." Acts xix. 7.

**ስዕቅም፡ እሱ፡ ሁላት፡ ካወ፡** "And the men were twelve."

**እርጥ፡ ደረሰኔ፡** "He fears," i.e. "is fearing."

2. Complex Attributes (see Ch. I. 2.) have their subordinate parts before them.

### EXAMPLE.

**ያህ፡ በወ፡ በስራወ፡ ሁላ፡ ተንተረለች፡ ካወ፡**

Lit. "This man, in his work all, is cunning"—"is cunning in all his doings."

3. The Attribute always follows the Subject. This is evident from the preceding instances.

4. It often agrees with the Subject in Gender, Number, and Case: often does not. As to the Gender, the concordance may be assumed, most of the Nominal forms being of Common Gender; and, in the Adjective Participles at least, the Gender is strictly attended to. Concerning Number, the Singular is more used in Adjectives than the Plural; which may be accounted for by the supposition, that they are regarded as an abstract mass, of which the individual subjects have their share; e.g.

**እሉሁ፡ በወቻ፡ ደህፍ፡ ፍጥወ፡** "These men are good."

But when the Attribute is a Relative Participle, it must agree in Number,

as well as in Gender, Case, and Person, (see Page 73.) with its subject; e.g.

**እለልች፡ የታሙኑ፡ ቅጥዎ፡፡** “His servants are faithful.”

The Number is especially uncertain, when the Subject is a Collective Noun; e.g.

**ስዎ፡ ሁሉ፡ ይሞታል፡** “All men (or every man) dies.”

**አዝቦ፡ ተሰበሰቦች፡** (Sing.) or **ተሰበሰቦ፡** (Pl.) “The people was (or were) gathered together.”

With regard to Case, we remember but one instance where the Subject and the Attribute do not agree; **ብቻ፡** with Suffixes; e.g.

**እኔ፡ በታየን፡ ነኝ፡** “I am alone.”

Here is the Subject **እኔ**: in the Nominative, and the Attribute **በታየን፡** in the Accusative Case.

### CHAP. III.

#### VARIOUS USES AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOUN.

##### A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives.

1. Two or more Substantives connected together, denoting the same thing, are in a state of apposition, and must agree in Gender and Number; e.g.

**እግዥአብአር፡ እምላክ፡** “The Lord God.”

**ወንድ፡ ገርያ፡** “a man-slave.”

**ገንዘብ፡ ዴቃቃ፡** “King David,” & **ደቃቃ፡ ገንዘብ፡** “David, the king.”

**ሻጋዕላች፡ ብረች፡** “Negroes,” “slaves”; i.e. “Negro-slaves.”

2. Nouns of *Quantity* are joined to other Substantives in the Nominative Case; e.g.

**ጥቅም፡ በር፡** “a little silver.”

**እንዲ፡ ካጥር፡ በን፡** “one pound (of) coffee.”

**እንዲ፡ ካምብ፡ ወን፡** “one jar (of) water.”

3. Substantives of Quality, of Origin, or of Possession, are joined to other Substantives. They stand in the Genitive Case; e.g.

**የደንብያ፡ በት፡** “a house (made) of stone.”

**የጠራ፡ መስታ፡** “Teff-bread-cakes.”

**የገዢ፡ በዎ፡** “a man of the country”; or the Ethiopic expression,  
**ገልጻ፡፡**

**የገባ፡ መሸጪ፡** “the farmer’s plough.”

More about this when we come to speak of the Genitive Case. (See p. 167.)

4. On the construction of Object-Substantives with Subject-Substantives we shall speak when coming to consider the Verb. (See Ch. VIII.)

### B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives.

Adjectives may be connected with Substantives, (a) either as epithets to the Subject; or (b) as Attributes of the sentence; or (c) as modified by another accompanying Substantive.

1. As *Epitheton* of a Substantive, the Adjective generally *precedes* the latter; e.g. ብቃ፡ ማዕድ፡ “a good man.”

2. In Number and Gender, the Epithetic Adjective does not always agree with its Substantive; but the following rules are observed:

(a) The Substantive may be in the Plural, and the Adjective in the Singular Number; never the reverse; e.g.

**ጽዕኖ፡ መጽሕፍት፡** “good books”; never **ጽዕኖ፡ መጽሕፍ፡**

(b) In the same manner, the Adjective is most frequently used in the Masculine form, when the Substantive is of Feminine Gender; but a Feminine Adjective is never used for a Masculine Substantive; e.g.

**ከኩ፡ በታ፡** “a bad woman,” but not **ንጂስት፡ \*** **ወንድ፡** “a pure man.”

3. The preceding paragraph refers not to Participial Adjectives of the Relative form, as in them the strictest attention is paid both to Number and Gender. (See Page 163. §. 4.)

4. When the Adjective is *attribute* to the sentence, the rules laid down in the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. §§ 3, 4. obtain.

5. When another qualifying Substantive is connected with the Adjective, a Relative Participle is required as complement; e.g.

**በልጥዎ፡ ነጂስት፡ የጂ፡ በዋና፡** “Men who are pure in their hearts.”

### C. Number of Nouns.

There is a strong tendency in the Abyssinians to use the Singular Number, where we would use the Plural. We shall point out several cases where the latter never, and others where it but seldom is used, although it would be impossible, in the present stage of our knowledge of the

\* We do not quote **ከኩች፡**, the Feminine form of **ከኩ፡**, because it is not used in the Amharic, nor the Participle **የከኩች፡**; because, when Adjective-Participles are used, the Gender and Number is always strictly attended to. (See the preceding Chap. Sect. II. § 4.)

Amharic language, to give rules for every case, and would exceed the bounds which must be assigned to this head. The following classes are, some of them, never, others, seldom used in the Plural:

1. Nouns denoting a mass; as, gold, silver, corn, wheat, honey, fat, dust, &c.

2. Several parts of the animal body; *e.g.*

**አብ:** "the heart."

**մշ:** "flesh."

**ՄՔ:** "the belly."

**ՃԴԿ:** "hair."

**ՔՊ:** "blood."

3. The soul, and several powers and faculties of the mind:

**ԻՇՈ:** "the soul."

**ՕՔ:** "love."

**ՃՓՔ:** "the will."

**ՃՓԿ:** "charity."

**ՃՌՈ:** "thought."

**ՃՌՅ:** "joy."

**ՃՈՒ:** "reason."

**ՃՈՅՆ:** hope."

4. Most Abstract Nouns, denoting quality, condition, action, quantity. We especially refer to the two Tables of Nominal Forms. Table I: Triliteral Radices of Verbs, No. 5. and Quadrilateral ones of No. 4. Table II: Simple Forms of 3. A. a. 4. 6.; and Augmented Forms, 1. a. c.; some of *d.*; and almost all of *e.*

5. The following Collective Nouns are not often used in the Plural:

(a) Generical names of animals and of plants; *e.g.*

**Ք-Ա:** "hyæna."

**ՀՈՒ:** "flower."

(b) Names of assemblages of men, or other beings; *e.g.* **ՓՂՅ:** "tribe," "sect," "kind," &c. The Plural of this word, **ՓՂՄԴ:** signifies the individuals belonging to the whole assemblage. **ԹՂԴ:** "court of justice," **ՀՂՎ:** "town," "country," and other words.

6. Certain periods of time: **ՓՅ:** "day." **ՆԴԴ:** and **ՆԾԴ:** "night." **ՈՒՐԴ:** "hour." **ՓԴԿ:** "noon." **ՀՎԲ:** "forenoon." These are never used in the Plural number. Seldom: **ՂԱ:** "time." **ԽԾՈՅ:** "time," "period." **ՀԾՈԴ:** "year." **ԴՐՄՅԴ:** "week."

7. Several Nouns denoting confines, borders, shores, &c.; *e.g.* **ՔԸ:** "banks," "shores," "coast." **ՔԸԴ:** "borders." **ՓՈՅ:** "confines," "borders." **ԽԾԵ:** "seam," "hem."

8. As to the agreement in Number between Nouns in the same sentence, either Subjects or Attributes, see the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. 4.; and in this Chapter, A. 1. and B. 2.

#### D. On the Various Cases of Declension.

1. The *Nominative* is, in common conversation, often improperly used

where the Preposition ቅድ: should stand; e.g. አንገላለ፡ ሲያ፡ “He went Angollala,” omitting ቅድ: “to.”

2. It is applied in answer to the question, How long? How often? How much? e.g.

የስት፡ ቅድ፡ ተቀመጥ፡ “He remained three days.”

ብኩ፡ ገዢ፡ መጠ፡ “He came many times.”

አንድ፡ መዳጋ፡ ገብስ፡ “One mādēga (a certain measure) barley.”

3. The Genitive Case expresses:

(a) *Possession*:

የጥት፡ በት፡ “My father’s house.” የንግሥ፡ ዘይል፡ “The king’s power.”

(b) *Origin*:

የወጪድር፡ ፍርድ፡ “The fruit of the earth.”

የአበባ፡ በወጥ፡ “A man of (from) Abyssinia,” i.e. “An Abyssinian.”

(c) *Quality*:

የበረት፡ እቅ፡ “Iron furniture.” የጽሑፍ፡ በት፡ “A house of stone.”

Here it supplies the place of Adjectives.

(d) *Measure of time, space*:

የሰባት፡ እመት፡ በር፡ “The work of seven years.”

የሁለት፡ ቅድ፡ መንገድ፡ “Two days’ journey.”

(e) *Price and Quantity*:

የኩድ፡ በር፡ በን፡ “One dollar’s (worth) of coffee.”

4. When Prepositions precede the word which stands in the Genitive Case, the P: is dropped. See Part I. Ch. VII. 3. B.

5. When an Accusative follows the Genitive, the latter adopts the mark ን፡ of the former, so that the word seems to stand both in the Genitive and in the Accusative; e.g.

የኢት፡ ክተማ፡ እሩሁ፡ “I have seen the capital of the country.”

የእግዚአብሔርን፡ የምላክሁን፡ ስም፡ ክንቱ፡ እታድርጊው፡

“Thou shalt not use the name of the Lord thy God in vain.” Ex. xx. 7.

6. When the Genitive belongs to several Substantives in apposition, its P: is to be applied to each; when to a Substantive preceded by an Epithetical Adjective, it is applied only to the Adjective; e.g.

የድቃዊት፡ የንግሥ፡ የኩበ፡ መዘመድ፡ “The Psalms of David, (of) the King, and (of the) Prophet.”

የኩሁ፡ በወጥ፡ ካር፡ “The words of a good man.”

7. When the Genitive belongs to a Substantive having several Epithetic

Adjectives, the **P:** is applied to each Adjective, and may, or may not, be applied to the Substantive also ; e.g.

**የታላቂያ: የወጪ፡ የባለጠንም፡ የሰላም፡ በተ፡ መቀዳበ፡**  
or **የታላቂያ: የወጪ፡ የባለጠንም፡ ሰላም፡ በተ፡ መቀዳበ፡**  
“The temple of the great, wise, and wealthy Solomon.”

8. The Ethiopic Genitive, or Status Constructus, has been mentioned, Part II. Ch. I. Sect. I. 4. and Sect. V. 2.

9. The *Dative* being formed by the prefixion of the Preposition **አ:** (*to, for, in favour, in behalf, &c.*) to the Noun, we need only to refer to what has been said, Part II. Ch. VI. 2. e.

10. The *Accusative Case* is formed by the annexion of **ን:** at the end : it serves to indicate the immediate or direct action of the Subject upon its object ; and is required by all Active, Intensive, Transitive, and Causative Verbs ; e.g.

**ስዕድ፡ ለዚያ፡** “He sent a man.”

Although this rule is very plain, it may not be superfluous to specify it a little. The Accusative is governed—

(a) By the Verb Finite ; e.g.

**መልካትን፡ ይጽናል፡** “He writes a letter.”

**ተግባሩን፡ እያደርግ፡** “Do thy business.”

**በተኞን፡ ይዘ፡ ሲሸፍ፡** “He took his stick, and went.”

(b) By the Infinitive ; e.g.

**በነውን፡ ሰራ፡ መስራት፡ እያወቅም፡** “He knows not to perform (cannot perform) good works.”

(c) By Relative Participles ; e.g.

**ያህን፡ ያደረገ፡** “He who has done this.”

**ልደን፡ የሙዕራ፡** “He that loves his child.”

(d) By Nominal Active Participles ; e.g.

**በተኞ፡ ዘዴ፡** “One that builds a house.”

11. Besides Active Verbs, there are a few phrases in which the Accusative is used ; e.g.

**መንገዶን፡ እሳይልሁ፡** “I go my way.”

**በተኞ፡ ገጣ፡** “He entered his house.”

**ብታ፡** “alone,” “single,” with Suffixes, assumes the Accusative form, when it is converted into an Adverb ; e.g.

**ብታውን፡ ካበሩ፡** “He was by himself.”

12. When the Noun which stands in the Accusative terminates in a

letter of the third, fourth, fifth, or seventh order, a euphonic Օ՛: is joined before the accusative Դ:: e.g.

**ԹՊՓՈՒՅ:** ՄԱՅԱՓՈՒՅՄ: ՈՀՈՒՅՄ: ՓՈԾՓՈՒՅՄ: ՀՐԱՅ:

"I saw the herdsman, the herd, the oxen, and the fox."

12. Relative Participles in ւ, standing in the Accusative, have a euphonic Կ՛: before the accusative Դ::; e.g.

**ՔԲՍ-ԴԴ:** ԲՂԵԾ-ԴԴՄ: ՈՀ: "The ox which I saw, and which they killed."

13. Accusative Nouns ending in the sixth order are euphonically changed into the second; Accusative Participles, into the first order; the latter receiving a euphonic Օ՛:; e.g.

**ՄՃԻԽՄ-Դ:** ԱՃՌ: "good wine."

**ՔՃՎԱՓ-Դ:** ՅՈՒՆԴ: "The sin which thou hast committed."

14. When a Descriptive Adjective is connected with the Noun standing in the Accusative, the Դ: is not generally affixed to both, but sometimes to the Substantive, sometimes to its epitheton; when the latter is a Participle, to the Participle: e.g. it is equally good to say **ՔՄՄ:** ՈՓ-Դ: or **ՔՄՄՓ-Դ:** ՈՓ: "a good man," but with a Participle; e.g.

**ԲՈՂԱՌՓ-Դ:** ՆՀՃՃ: "The bread which thou (f.) hast eaten."

15. When several Adjectives are connected with a Substantive in the Accusative Case, the Դ: is put to each of the Adjectives, but not to the Substantive; e.g.

**ԴԱՓԴ:** ՈԳԵՃ.ՄԾ-ԴԴՄ: ՈԴ: ԳՃԴԴՄ: ԲԳՄԴՃ.Փ-Դ: ԿՃ:

Փ-ՃՈՒ: "They cut down a large, thick, and good-fruit-bearing tree," i.e.  
"a large and thick tree which bore good fruit."

16. Concerning the construction of the Genitive with the Accusative, see §. 5.

~~~~~

z

CHAP. IV.

ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. The Amharic Language has almost the same mode of comparing things with each other as the Hebrew; namely, especially by prefixing the Preposition **՚**: "of," "from," to the Positive Noun or Pronoun; e.g.

՚መታት፡ መመሪ፡ ይገለል፡ "Learning is better than to be idle."

2. In many cases, they add the Postpositive Particle **ደልቻ**: which gives, however, no additional force to the idea of gradation already expressed by **՚**; but it stands generally at the end of a sentence, and is used more for Verbs than for Adjectives; e.g.

ይህን፡ **ኅፍ፡** **ተረዝማለች፡** **ነዚያች፡** **ደልቻ፡**

"This tree is tall, more than that one."

Here it would be equally good to say,

ይህን፡ **ኅፍ፡** **ነዚያች፡** **ተረዝማለች፡** "This tree is taller than that one."

3. The Verbs **በለው**: "is greater," **ከንስ**: "is smaller," "less," and **ተዋላ**: "is better," are in themselves of a comparative nature: nevertheless, when brought together with other Adjectives or Verbs for comparison, they require the **՚**; as well as Adjectives or other Verbs; e.g.

ቅብር፡ **ነትና-ባት፡** **ይገለል፡** "Wisdom is better than wealth."

ዘሆን፡ **ነጋዜጥ፡** **ዶጂጠል፡** "An elephant is larger than a mouse."

አንበሳል፡ **ነጋዜቦር፡** **ተንሰላች፡** "Angollala is smaller than Ankobar."

4. Besides the preceding, every verb of quality, condition, or even of action, is capable of expressing a comparison when constructed with **՚**: for the adjective is contained in that verb; e.g.

ተራ፡ **ነካፍ፡** **ይረዝማል፡** "A mountain is higher than a tree."

ጋጌ፡ **ነሞት፡** **ተከፋፈለች፡** "Sin is worse than death."

Verbs of action, however, require **ደልቻ**: e.g.

ነድታል፡ **ደልቻ፡** **አዎላል፡** **ድክም፡** "Paul laboured more than Peter."

5. The Superlative is rendered by **ነዚያ**: (with Suffixes) and **ነዚያ**: **ደልቻ**: e.g.

መኖር፡ **ታላቸ፡** **ፍት፡** **ዓለም፡** **ዶጂጠል፡** **እግዢ-እ-በኩር፡** **ተ፡** **ነዚያ**: **ዶጂጠል፡** "The earth is great; the universe is greater; but God is greatest (of all)."

ነዚያ-ተወ፡ **ደልቻ፡** **እርስጥ፡** **ተመሩ፡** "He learned more than they all."



CHAP. V.

ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numeral does not, properly speaking, form a particular part of speech, but is either, as the Cardinals, a Substantive, or, as are the Ordinals, an Adjective, or, as the Distributive, an Adverb. We need therefore to say but little about their Syntax.

2. The Cardinal Numbers are always, when connected with other Nouns, to be considered as in apposition with them; and they always precede; e.g.

Ա-Ղ-Դ: ՈՓ-Դ:

"two men."

3. All the Numbers, from One upwards, seem to be considered as Plurals; wherefore they are of common gender, except հՆՐ: "one," which has in the feminine, հՆՁ-Դ::

4. Notwithstanding this, the noun to which the numeral is joined, is not always used in the plural number. Although they use, in common language, the singular and the plural indiscriminately, the rule seems to hold good, that the round numbers, ten, twenty, &c. up to a hundred, and the large numbers, as hundred, thousand, ten thousand (հՃՃ: *mύριοι*), are more frequently constructed with the noun in the singular than in the plural, and the numbers between every ten generally in the plural; e.g.

Ա-Ղ-Դ: ՈՓ-Դ: "two men." **Ա-Ք:** ՈՓ-Դ: "twenty man."

5. The Numbers Ա-Ք: Ա-Ղ-Դ: Հ-Ը-Պ: Հ-Մ-Դ: Մ-Դ-Դ: Ա-Մ-Դ: Ո-Մ-Դ: Կ-Մ-Դ: Խ-Մ-Դ: Մ-Դ-Դ:: are generally used for Ordinals as well as for Cardinals; or rather, as they do not like to adopt the ordinal form for those numbers, they place the cardinal behind the noun as a predicate; e.g.

Մ-Դ-Դ: Ա-Ք: "book twenty," instead of Ա-Ք-Դ: Մ-Դ-Դ: "the twentieth book."

6. The form of the Ordinal Numbers is regularly derived from the Cardinals; except, as in our European and in other languages, the first; although in compound numbers that also is used in the regular form; e.g.

Հ-Մ-Ճ: Հ-Ն-Ճ:

"the eleventh."

When used in a simple form, Հ-Ն-Ճ: signifies "unique," "sole," "only." In enumeration, they use Մ-Ջ-Մ-Ը-Ը: "the beginning," or Ճ-Դ-Դ: "the foremost," "first."

7. As for the Distributives, nothing needs to be added to what has been said Part II. Ch. II. §. 4.



CHAP. VI.

SYNTAX OF THE SEPARABLE PRONOUNS.

1. The Separable Personal Pronoun is used,

(a) When it is the subject of a sentence. **אֵל:** **אָמַרְתִּי**: "I go," although it is not necessary to use it.

(b) When an emphasis lies on the pronoun; e.g.

אָמַרְתִּי: **אָמַרְתִּי וְתִּשְׁמַחְתִּי:** **אֵל:** **אָמַרְתִּי וְתִּשְׁמַחְתִּי:** **אָמַרְתִּי:**

"He has not done it, but I have."

2. The third person singular and plural is used for demonstration; as is the reverse in the Latin and Greek; e.g.

אֲنָזֶן: **פָּנָעֶן:** **אֲנָזֶן:** **אִוֶּן:** **פָּנָעֶן:** "That which thou hast now been telling me, is the same with what I told thee."

3. The Separable Possessive Pronoun is used only when a stress is laid upon it; e.g. **בְּתוֹךְ:** **בְּתוֹךְ:** **אַלְפָה:** **אַלְפָה:** **אֲנָזֶן:** **אֲנָזֶן:** **אִוֶּן:** **אִוֶּן:** **פָּנָעֶן:** **פָּנָעֶן:** "For they are Thine. And all that is mine, the same is Thine; and Thine, the same is mine."

Where no such stress lies on the Possessive, Suffixes are used.

4. The Singular Masculine of both the *Demonstrative* Pronouns forms Adverbs, by the junction of Prepositions with the Genitive Case of those Pronouns. See Part II. Ch. V. 4. (b).

5. The *Interrogative* **מַה:** "who?" "which?" "what?" is used for persons: it is made use of, also, for inanimate subjects in the phrase **מַה:** **אִוֶּן:** **לִשְׂמָה:** or **לִשְׂמָה:** **מַה:** **אִוֶּן:** (**מַהַיְוָה:**) "What is his (its) name?" On the contrary, the Impersonal **מַה:** is employed as a Personal Interrogative, by way of utter contempt, in the expression, **מַה:** **אָבָתִךְ:** "What is his father?" Both these expressions are elliptical.

6. The Indefinite **אֲלָמָה:**, which may be considered, as it is in the other Semitic languages, as a Noun, **אֲלָמָה:** (**לְאָלָם**, **كُلٌّ**) with suffixes, assumes no other suffix in the singular than the suffixes masculine and feminine of the third person; but it takes all the suffixes of the plural: **אֲלָמָה:** **אֲלָמָהִים:** **אֲלָמָהִים:** **אֲלָמָהִים:**

7. When **אֲלָמָה:** is absolute, it stands at the beginning of a sentence: when connected with Nouns or Participles, it follows them; e.g.

אֲלָמָה: **מַלְאָה:** "All is gone."

אֲלָמָה: **אָמַרְתִּי:** "He has done all."

לְאָלָם: **אֲלָמָה:** "All men," "every man," "people in general," &c.

8. **Ս-Ա-:**, as subject of the sentence, and without any other suffixes, may have its verb either in the singular or in the plural: when connected with nouns or participles, or with other suffixes, the number and person of the verb are determined by those nouns, participles, or suffixes; e.g.

Ս-Ա-: ՔԹԳ-Ա-: "All will (sing.) perish"; or,

Ս-Ա-: ՔԹԳ-Ա-: "All will (plur.) perish."

Ս-Ա-Դ-Դ-: ԴՀՁ-Ի-: "We are all together."

ԴԱՄ-Դ-Դ-: Ս-Ա-: ՏՌՈՒՈ-: Ս-Ա-Դ-Վ-Վ-: ԴՎԴ-: "All the kings were assembled together, and all of them engaged in war."

9. **Ճ-Ճ-Դ-Դ-:** "some," "something," "any thing"; with negation, "nothing"; e.g.

Ճ-Ճ-Դ-Դ-: ՌՊՓ-: "Give him something."

Ճ-Ճ-Դ-Դ-: ՀՃԵՎՈՆԱՎ-Վ-: "I received nothing."

10. **ՀՔԸ-:** signifies an indefinite number or quantity; e.g.

ՀՔԸ-: ՌՓԴ-: ՔՊԿ-Դ-: **ՀՔԸ-:** ԴՅ-: ՔԹՀ-ԹՎՀ-ՈՒ-Դ-: "Some men believe; others doubt it."

When it is predicate, it signifies a large quantity:

Ի-ՊՒ-: **ՀՔԸ-:** ԻՈՒ-: "His property is considerable."

11. In order to express Reciprocity, the Abyssinians make use of the form **ՀՀՄ-Ր-:** ՈՀՈ-—:, with the Plural Suffixes ա-Դ-Դ-: ա-Դ-Ա-: and ա-Վ-Վ-: and a Reciprocatice or other Verb; e.g.

ՀՀՄ-Ր-: ՈՀՈ-Դ-Ա-: ԴՎԲ-Ջ-: "Love one another!"

12. An Indefinite Pronoun is **Ճ-Ճ-Դ-Դ-:** which signifies, "The what's his name." Gr. ὁ δεῖνα; French, chose; German, Dingerich; e.g.

Ճ-Ճ-Դ-Դ-: ՀՔԽԵՎ-Վ-: "The what's his name does not go."



CHAP. VII.

ON THE AFFIXED PRONOUNS.

1. As to their position, that is determined, the Nominal Suffixes being joined to the final letter of the Noun (or Adverb); the verbal to the last radical of the Verb, or to the Verbal Affirmative. Adjectives do not assume suffixes, except when considered as Substantives.

2. The Nominal Suffixes are to be considered as possessive; the verbal ones as objective; e.g.

ԱԽ-: "My child."

ԾՈ-Դ-: "He struck me."

Adverbs with Suffixes are treated by them as Substantives, the nominal Suffixes being joined to them; *e.g.*

በለም: "over me."

3. Concerning the Verbal Suffixes, enough has been said in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV. sect. V. We add here, that the suffix of the first pronoun in the singular is sometimes used pleonastically; *e.g.*

አይሁት: "I am gone."



CHAP. VIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE VERB.

Having discussed the nature and use of the Verb, and its various parts, rather extensively in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV., we need not here go through it at full length; but shall offer, in the first place, such additional remarks on the Moods, Tenses, and Persons, as are deemed necessary; and, in the second place, to show the agreement of one verb with another, and of the verb with the other parts of speech.

SECTION I.

On the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.

1. The following Tenses are used for the *past* time: the Simple Preterite of the Indicative, the Compound Preterite of the Contingent, and the Compound Preterite of the Constructive.

(a) The Simple Preterite of the Indicative is used,

α. For the Perfect Tense; *e.g.*

እናገድ: መጠቅ: "A stranger has arrived."

ስኩበ: ተስቀበበ: "The people have gathered themselves together."

β. For the Historical Tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect; *e.g.*

ነጥረደም: በወደደ: ገዢ: ተስተላች: በዘ፡ እስከባለ፡

"And when he descended from the mountain, many people followed him."

Matt. viii. 1.

ተእኔዘ፡ ዘፈጋሙ፡ በጃላ፡ ተዘረም፡ እለፈ፡

"When he had finished his command, he passed over from thence."

Matt. xi. 1.

γ. For the Present or Immediate Future, in a very few instances. So when visitors courteously ask leave to go, they do it by saying: **አይሁት:** "I am gone," *i.e.* "If you allow me, I go now." Or when a person is

frequently called, and does not come, he at last answers : **սա՞Ա :** **սա՞Ա :** "I come ! I come !"

δ. With Conjunction Prefixes, it serves for the Potential and Optative Moods.—See Sect. II. §. 5. and Isa. i. 9.

(b) The Compound Preterite of the Contingent is used,

α. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative ; e.g.

ՆԵ : **ՈՃԱՍԹ :** **ՆՀՈՒԴՎՈ :** **ՔՈՌ :** **ԶՈՒ :** "Before I came, they had been eating."

β. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Potential Mood :

ՊԴԴԱԳՄՆՈ : **Ո. ՈՒԲ :** **ՆՈԸ :** "If thou wouldest ask him, he would give thee."

ՔՄՆ : **ԻՂՋՁՂՄ :** **ՈՓՋՄ :** **ՆՈԸՄ :** "If thou hadst not done this, I should have loved thee."

(c) The Compound Preterite of the Constructive is used chiefly for the Pluperfect, and sometimes for the Imperfect of the Indicative ; e.g.

ՈՎՖ : **ՆՈԸՄ :** "I had given."

2. Tenses used for the *Present*, are, the Present of the Indicative ; the Second, or Aoristic Constructive ; and the Contingent with Conjunctions.

(a) The Present Indicative and the Aoristic Constructive are both used for the Present Indicative ; e.g.

ՆՀՈՒ : **ՏԱԿՈՒԴՎՈՒ :** **ՆԵ :** **ԿՊՄ :** **ՆԱԽԱ :**

"Whereas he is talking, I keep silence."

(b) The Present Indicative is used for both the Present and the Future tenses : the Aoristic Constructive serves especially for an action, condition, state, or suffering, which *continues* ; and therefore, although it is more frequently used for the Present, it is likewise made use of for the Perfect. This peculiarity of both these forms is owing to the Auxiliary Verb Substantive **ՀԱ :** with which they are composed.

(c) The Simple Contingent Mood serves for the Present as well as for the Future Tenses, when connected with Particles ; e.g. the Participles **ԲԾՋԱՄ :** "he that comes ;" **Ո. ԱՍԹ :** "when he comes ;" **Ո. ՁԱՍԹ :** "before he comes ;" Negative assertions : **ՀՁԱՍԹԳՅ :** "he comes not," "will not come ;" Conditional expressions : **Ո. ԱԾԼՈ :** "if he end," or "if he ends ;" Final and referential : **ՆԴՐ ՔՃ :** "that he writes" or "write ;" Final : **Ա. ՈՊԴ :** **ԴՆՎ :** "he rose to go out," where it is for an Infinitive ; **ՈՆՔ ԱՄ-Դ :** **ՔՃՃ :** **ԽՆՃ :** **մեճ :** "He went to assist (that he might assist) his brother."

3. The *Future* time is generally expressed by the same forms which serve for the Present, except the Aoristic Constructive. Vide 2. a.—In p. 66 of this work we pointed out another mode of a decidedly future form; besides which they make use of the Contingent with እኩ፡ or with ይህች፡ The one is found in the negative expression, Ezek. xvii. 9 : ተፋ፡ ይሁዕና፡ የለዋወ፡ ፊረወ፡ ይቀር፡ የለዋወ፡ “Shall not its root be extracted; and its fruit, shall it not be cut off.” But these two latter forms are not confined to the Future: they are also used for the Present Tense.

SECTION II.

On the Moods of the Amharic Verb.

On this head, we shall add but little to what has been stated Chap. IV. of the preceding part, and in the preceding Section of this Chapter.

1. The *Contingent* serves for the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, and Participial Moods; as is shown in the preceding Section.

2. The *Subjunctive* expresses a desire, or an indirect request, order, command, or obligation.—See p. 72.

3. The *Infinitive*, as Verbal Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes; but relates to and acts upon other nouns in a verbal capacity; e.g.

አንተው፡ መጥኑ፡ “My obeying the King,” “my being obedient to the King.”

It is, however, likewise constructed as a Noun; e.g.

የክርስቲስ፡ መቅመት፡ “The coming of Christ.”

ይረዳ፡ ለማፍራት፡ ተተክለኝ፡ “In order to bear fruit was it planted.”

4. The *Participles* are of the same character, partaking of the nature of Adjectives (as the Infinitive does of the nature of Nouns), and of the Verb, as has been shown in the preceding Part, pp. 72, 73. The Simple forms, however, have more of a nominal; the Augmented forms more of a verbal character. The Augmented forms are verbally flexible through all the persons; besides their being capable of receiving Prepositions, and the Accusative ጥ፡ marking them as Nouns. ሰብ፡ የለም፡ በዚ፡ እንደ፡ ጥ፡ የለዋወ፡ ካር፡ መለዋጥ፡ እያዋጭ፡ “A man of a *determined* character does not like to change his word *which he once has spoken*. ፊረወ፡ ለሞሳ፡ ይብ፡ ይለዋል፡ ከር፡ ኮሙኬታ፡ ይልዋ፡ “The gatherer of the fruit rejoices, more than *those that sowed the seed*.”

5. There is in the Amharic Language no peculiar form for the Optative Mood: they express it by circumscription; e.g.

በሆነ፡ ባስተመራሁ፡ በወይሸሁ፡ “If it had been, if thou hadst instructed me, I should have liked it.”

SECTION III.

Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence.

1. The Amharic Verb having all the personal forms connected with it, it is capable of including the subject in itself; e.g.

ወጥቃ: “he observed.” **ሙታሃ:** “thou hast beaten.”

And by the aid of Suffixed Pronouns and Prepositions, it is further capable of expressing a whole sentence in itself; e.g.

መጠጣሁ: “He came upon thee.” **ሙታሃው:** “Thou hast struck him.”

2. But when, as is more usual, the subject is separate from the Verb, the latter should agree with it in gender, number, and person; e.g.

ይህንት፡ ቤት፡ አቶአደግም፡ “This woman does not go.”

ኦላልቱ፡ ተከተሉት፡ “His servants followed him.”

3. Collective Nouns, however, which admit of a Plural, have the Verb sometimes in the Singular, sometimes in the Plural: e.g.

ዕዝዎ፡ ተስቦስቦኝ፡ “The people gathered itself together”; or

ዕዝዎ፡ ተስቦስቦ፡ “The people gathered *themselves* together.”

4. When there are more than one subject in a sentence, the Verb stands either in the Third Person of the Plural, or it is determined by what is considered as the chief subject; e.g.

ወንድኬ፡ ቤት፡ መጠ፡ “Male and female came.”

ንጂዢ፡ ዘረዋቱ፡ ተመሳ፡ “The king and his army were beaten.”

When the person who is addressed forms one of the subjects, the Verb follows in the Second Person Plural; e.g.

ነጂዢ፡ ገብሩም፡ አንተም፡ ሲተማሩ፡ ፍቃሃ፡

“Kiddan, Gabru, and thou, (you) are to learn.”

When the speaker is included, the Verb is to be in the First Person Plural:

እርሰተውኬ፡ እና፡ ተለዋዱ፡ “They and we are separated.”

5. When the subject consists of several Infinitives, the number is not multiplied, and the Verb is used in the singular; e.g.

መማሪኬ፡ መስራት፡ ይጠቅማል፡ “Learning and working is useful.”

But when the subject consists of several Particles, which are considered as Nouns, the Verb must be in the plural; e.g.

ስጋዋኬ፡ ገዢ፡ መጠጣት፡ “A thief and a murderer came upon him.”

6. Active and Transitive Verbs have their objects in the Accusative

▲ ▲

Case: see Ch. III. 10. Transitive and Causative Verbs may have a double Accusative; e.g.

ሙልእከተን፡ እስካድዎ፡ "He caused him to write a letter."

But as these Verbs may sometimes be used as Intransitive, the use of Prepositions is frequently applied; e.g.

ፈርሱት፡ "He judged over (or against) him."

ቂጠት፡ "He wrote in it."

ስውን፡ እስመጣለት፡ "He caused a man to come *for* (or *to*) him."

7. Intransitive Verbs are generally connected with their objects by Prepositions; e.g.

በበት፡ ንበረ፡ "He was in the house."

ውጋደ፡ ሙሉ፡ "He went to his country."

በወጪበሩ፡ ተቀሙበ፡ "He sat upon his chair."

8. When the object of the sentence is another Verb, that is expressed by the Infinitive, or by the Contingent with Conjunctions; e.g.

ሙማር፡ ይውቻል፡ "He likes to learn"; or,

ዶማር፡ ከነድ፡ ይውቻል፡ "He likes that he may learn."

ሙድግኝ፡ ያውቻል፡ "He can read."

9. The reigning Verb should be always at the end of the sentence, whether the object be simple, or complex, or compound; e.g.

ስው፡ የልዕ዗ዎች፡ ነገር፡ እያደረግም፡

"What man does not like, he will not perform."

እግዢእሰብር፡ በትእኔዘ፡ የከለከለው፡ ነገር፡ ስው፡ የደረገ፡

"What God in His law has prohibited, man does commit."

በኢትዮጵያው፡ ቅል፡ እናም፡ ከነድ፡ በጀመራታችም፡ እኩን፡ የተሰ፡ ክርስተዋ፡ የሰራው፡ መድሃኒት፡ በቅድመዋጥ፡ እንቀበል፡ ከነድ፡ ወንኤል፡ የሚተምረፍል፡ "The Gospel teaches us to believe in the Word of God, to repent of our sins, and to receive in faith the Salvation which Christ has wrought out for us."

CHAP. IX.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE REMAINING PARTS OF SPEECH.

As the doctrine of the Particles, i.e. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, has been pretty fully exhibited in the Etymological Part, Ch. V. to Ch. VIII., we do not think it necessary to add any more: and so we finish here the Amharic Grammar, adding only a few Specimens of Common Conversation, and a few Exercises.

PART IV.

SOME SPECIMENS OF CONVERSATION,
AND
A FEW EXERCISES.

1. CONVERSATIONAL MODES OF SALUTATION.

IN conversation, the Abyssinians are very polite towards each other, without using quite such a bombastic style as is common among the Arabs and other Eastern nations. When speaking of the Pronouns and under the Verb, we have mentioned two honorific distinctions for the second person in the singular, and that they speak of a third person of respect in the plural. A neglect of these distinctions is overlooked in foreigners, whilst learning their language; but amongst themselves it is taken as an offence, except with intimate friends, and in a few other instances. In saluting, the various times of the day, the state of health, frequency of intercourse, season of the year, and some other circumstances, are to be regarded as determining the mode of address.

As for the time of the day when persons meet, four times are distinguished, for which four separate Verbs are used; viz. (a) The *morning*, until the sun has finished half his course from the horizon to the meridian, i.e. between nine and ten o'clock A.M. During this time, when meeting, the verb አደረ: "to spend the night," "to rest," is used in the Preterite: when parting, the verb ፈፈድ: "to spend the forenoon," አስፈፈድ: "to make spend the forenoon," or ΦΛ: "to spend (አΦΛ: "to make spend) the middle of the day," in the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood. (b) The *forenoon*, from about nine to eleven o'clock A.M. At meeting, they salute each other with the verb ፈፈድ: "to spend the forenoon," in the Preterite: when parting, with the Verb ΦΛ: or አΦΛ: (c) *Noon* and *afternoon*, to sun-set. When meeting, they use ΦΛ: in the Preterite: when parting before five P.M., አΦΛ: when after five, the Subjunctive of አስመጥ: "to make pass the evening," or Imperative or Subjunctive of መጥ: "to pass the evening." (d) *Evening* and *night*, from sun-set to the first break of the day. When meeting, the Preterite of መጥ: when parting, either the Subjunctive or the Imperative of አደረ: "to pass the night," "to rest," or Subjunctive of አስፈፈድ: "to make pass the night," &c, is used.

ያመኬ: "May He (i.e. God) be gracious!" and **ያፈወስ:** "May He heal," "restore!" both with Suffixes, is used for addressing sick persons. The former wish also is used when a person sneezes. **ገብ:** in the Preterite, is used when meeting a person who has newly arrived at the place: in the

Subjunctive with Suffixes, when parting with a person who goes to another country. በኋላት: "to pass the time from one interview to another," is used in the Preterite, when persons meet who have not seen each other for some time. እስከበት: "to make pass &c., is used at parting, when they do not expect to meet again for a considerable time. Then they add, የወጪኝ: "May He bring us together again!" ከረመ: "to pass the rainy season," and እስከረመ: its transitive, is used in the same manner.

The following Specimens of Conversation will illustrate the preceding remarks. We choose the imaginary meeting of the servant Gabru, with his master Kiddana Maryam, after his return from an errand to a friend, Aito Malku, who lives in a distant part of the country. The meeting is supposed to take place in the morning.

K. M. የሆኑም: ገብረ፡ ገብሩ፡ Hast thou arrived in health (safely &c.), Gabru?

G. እግዢእስከር፡ ይመስጥና፡ God be praised! Have you, master, been well all the time since I saw you last?

K. M. እግዢእስከር፡ ይመስጥና፡ Thank God! Hast thou been all the time well?

G. እግዢእስከር፡ ይመስጥና፡ Thanks to God! Are you well?

K. M. እግዢእስከር፡ ይመስጥና፡ Thanks to God! I am well. Hast thou had a good journey?

G. መንገድ፡ ቅ፡ ከዘሩ፡ ተኩ
ሙኩ፡ በየሰተ፡ ቅ፡ ይደስታ፡
ከዘያም፡ እንደ፡ ቅ፡ ወል፡
ተመለከታ፡ በሁለተ፡ ቅም፡
ተዘላ፡ ገብሩ፡

I had a good journey. I arrived there in three days after I had started from hence, and staying there one day, I returned, and in two days and a half arrived here.

K. M. ውጤድር፡ ይለላ፡ እዚ፡
መልካ፡

What does Aito Malku say?

G. ይህፍተ፡ ይህፍተ፡ ይህ
ፍተ፡ ይህ፡ የሆኑም፡ እኩተ፡
የሆኑም፡ የሆኑም፡ ይህፍተ፡
የሆኑም፡ የሆኑም፡ ይህፍተ፡
የሆኑም፡ የሆኑም፡ የሆኑም፡
የሆኑም፡ የሆኑም፡ የሆኑም፡

"Are you well? Are you well? Are you well? Have you been quite well since our last interview? Are you well? Have you passed the rainy season well? My friendship amounts to heaven and earth," he said. — What you sent to him

**ኢቃጥም፡ ደስ፡ አስብት፡ እን
ዘለበዕር፡ ደስው፡ እግዢአብ
ሰር፡ ደስው፡ እግዢአብሰር፡
ያመኑዋ፡ አስ፡**

K. M. ገድሬ፡፡

G. እነ፡ አድራሻዋለሁ፡ አስ፡
K. M. በን፡ አሁንም፡ ፍስጥ
ሁን፡ በልተሁ፡ ወደ፡ ታመሙቅ፡
በት፡ ወደ፡ ወልተ፡ ገጠረሳል፡
ሐድድ፡ እግዢአብሰር፡ ደማ
ሪስ፡ እግዢአብሰር፡ ደፈውስ፡
ዘር፡ ተዋጥ፡ አልቀልልማን፡
በልክ፡፡

G. እነ፡ ተደሱ፡፡

K. M. እነ፡ በይህፍ፡ የወ
ልሁ፡፡

G. በይህፍ፡ የወልሁ፡ (ወልሁ፡)

I delivered, and he was very glad of it, and said, "May God give it (reward) you! May God give it you! May God glorify you!" (i.e. I am very much obliged to you.)

But how is (what did he say to) my request?

He agreed to do it.

Very well. Now eat thy dinner, and go to Walleta Gabriel, a sick woman, and (give her my respects, and tell her that I sympathize with her in her illness) say for me, "May God have mercy on thee, and restore thee! Doest thou not feel a little better to-day?"

Very well. I go then.

Very well. (Mayest thou spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

(May you spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

TASFU, another servant, enters, announcing a visitor.

Tasfu. እድቶ፡ ወልደ፡ ደንገል፡
አስ፡ ለገበ፡፡

K. M. እነ፡ ደገበ፡፡

There is Aito Walda Dengel:
Shall he come in?

Yes, let him come.

On entering, KIDDANA MARYAM attempts to rise; but AITO WALDA DENGEL hastens to prevent it; saying, ይከሩ፡ ይከሩ፡ "Remain remain!" or as usual :

በእግዢአብሰር፡ በሚርያም፡

W. D. እንደተ፡ እየሩ፡

K. M. እግዢአብሰር፡ ደመኑ
ገን፡ ደህፍ፡ እየሩ፡፡

W. D. እግዢአብሰር፡ ደመኑ
ገን፡ ደህፍ፡ ጽፈቤ፡፡

By God! by Mary! (i.e. Do not rise.)

How have you passed the night?

Thank God! Have you passed the night well?

Thank God! Have you passed the forenoon well?

K. M. እግዢሳብር: ይሙ
ጥንት: እቻኑን: ይህም: ፈፈሪ:: Thanks to God! Have you passed
the forenoon very well?

W. D. እግዢሳብር: ይሙስ
ገን:: ወጪተዋፍ: ለቻቸው: ህ-
ስ: ይህም: ፍጥዎ:: Thank God! Are your wife and
all your children well?

K. M. እግዢሳብር: ይሙስ
ገን:: ወጪቸ: ዘረ: ታማለቸ:: Thank God! My wife is poorly
to-day.

W. D. እደ:: ስመማቸው:: Ah! What is her complaint?

ጥንድር: ካወ:

K. M. ሆኖዋ: ዝመታል:: She has pain in the bowels.

W. D. ተስፋ:: Tasfu!

T. አበት:: Sir!

W. D. እግዢሳብር: ይማረ
ው: እግዢሳብር: ይፈውነው:
በልልች: እመበተሁን:: Speak to thy mistress in my be-
half; saying, "May God have mercy
on you! May God restore you!"

T. እሁን: ተቀኑ: ይቀለቸል:
ይለስ:: She says that she feels now a
little better.

W. D. እንደሆህ: የወ-ወች:
ባደራባየጥም: ይስጠቸ:: Henceforth, know me (as your
friend), and give me a Baldaraba*
(a man that introduces me to you).

K. M. እስ:: እንተ: ተስፋ:
እያቶች: ወልደ: ይ-ንሳ: በመው:
ወተድ: እያደሰተው:: Very well. Thou, Tasfu, when-
ever Aito Walda Dengel comes, do
thou introduce him.

W. D. ሂደሆች:: I go then.

K. M. እስ:: በይህም: የወ-አ::

W. D. በይህም: የወ-አ:: Very well. May He make you
spend the middle of the day well
i.e. Good bye!

K. M. እመን:: Amen!

* See በልደባ: in the Dictionary.

2. A FEW EXERCISES.

~~~~~  
SALVATION.

(See Amharic Spelling Book, p. 20.)

**አሁን፡ እናደህ፡ ስሮ፡ በዚም፡ ሁሉ፡ እግዢልጠስ፡ ከሳም፡ አቅራቢው፡ ደርድ፡ ከዘላለም፡ ጥ፡ ከተኞ፡ በታች፡ ስፍር፡ እግዢ፡ አቅራቢው፡ ለለዎን፡ የእጋዣ፡ መንገዶ፡ ከፈተሻ፡ በታለዋ፡ ማህፈቱ፡ የተወደደዎን፡ ልቻ፡ በቻ፡ ፍጤት፡ አድርገት፡ በስዕስ፡ ገዢ፡**

Now, as it is thus, all men having by their sins offended God, and fallen under the divine judgment and eternal damnation, God has opened for us another way, a way of Grace, when He in His mercy gave His Beloved Son as a ransom in our stead.

## BEST USE OF GEOGRAPHY.

(See Preface to the Amharic Geography.)

**ይህትን፡ በጣም፡ ተተማር፡ በበት፡ ተቀምጧሁ፡ ወድ፡ ፊቁ፡ እንደ፡ እንደሚከዳድ፡ ስዕስ፡ ተሆናለሁ፡ በቀድሞም፡ ስመጥቶ፡ እንዲ፡ ያልሰማሁዎን፡ እስካብ፡ መጽሑፍዎን፡ መግጥዎንም፡ ሲረጥዎንም፡ እስረታጥዎንም፡ ከዘሁ፡ ታንክሉሁ፡ ሁላጥዎም፡ ወንድሞኝሁ፡ ፊጥዎ፡ ሁላጥዎ፡ ተለቀጥ፡ ተፊነት፡ በልቀተኝ፡ እረዳትም፡ በየተኝ፡ ክፍኝም፡ አመዳቻሁ፡ የባትሁ፡ የድም፡ ልቻ፡ እውቀቶሙ፡ ሲረጥዎንም፡ መርጫር፡ የምጥገኘትዎንም፡ በት፡ ከር፡ መጠቀ፡ ከከዳም፡ ስሽ፡ ሁላጥዎንም፡ ወድ፡ ካይስህ፡ ተወድ፡ ከንድ፡ እግዢ፡ አቅራቢው፡ እንደሚከናወ፡ ከሁሉም፡ ወልቀ፡ እናደህ፡ በሉሁ፡ ካይስህ፡**

If thou learn this (Geography) perfectly, thou wilt, even whilst remaining at home, become like a man that goes into a distant country: and of nations, whose very name thou didst not hear before, thou wilt find here their residences, their nature, employments, their state and conditions. And all these are thy brethren; all of them, great and little, civilized and barbarians, good and evil, are thy relations, the sons of Adam, thy father. Know them, learn of them; and examine into their works. Whatever thou findest good in them, keep, and flee from evil. Love them all, as God wills that thou shalt love thyself. But above all things, ask thyself, saying,

ቅጥ:: እግዢስብር:: ስል:: “Wherefore has God created me?  
 የመጀሪር:: ሂጠቃቄ:: የእግዢስ:: “What is the will of God with me?  
 በአብርሃም:: ፈቃድ:: በኋ:: የመጀሪር:: “and how do I accomplish the will  
 ነው:: እኔም:: እንደተ:: እፈጻሚ  
 ለሁ:: የእግዢስ:: ፈቃድ:: “of God? What is the will of God  
 የመጀሪር:: ነው:: የእግዢስብር:: ፈቃድ:: “concerning my people and nation?  
 “And we, the people of Abyssinia,  
 ፈቃድ:: በአብርሃም:: በወገኖች:: “do we perform what God requires  
 እናም:: የአብርሃም:: ሂወቻ:: “us to do? And if we have not  
 የመጀሪር:: የአብርሃም:: እናይርባው  
 ለገን:: ተለዳደግነው:: የመጀሪር:: “done it, what is our duty henceforth  
 ይገባል:: እንደሆም:: በተመረዋ:: “to do?” If thou askest in this  
 መቆከራ:: ቅድስት:: በጣም:: ዝመ  
 ለሰላም:: እርጥንም:: ስማ:  
 ተከተለዋም::”

THE END.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

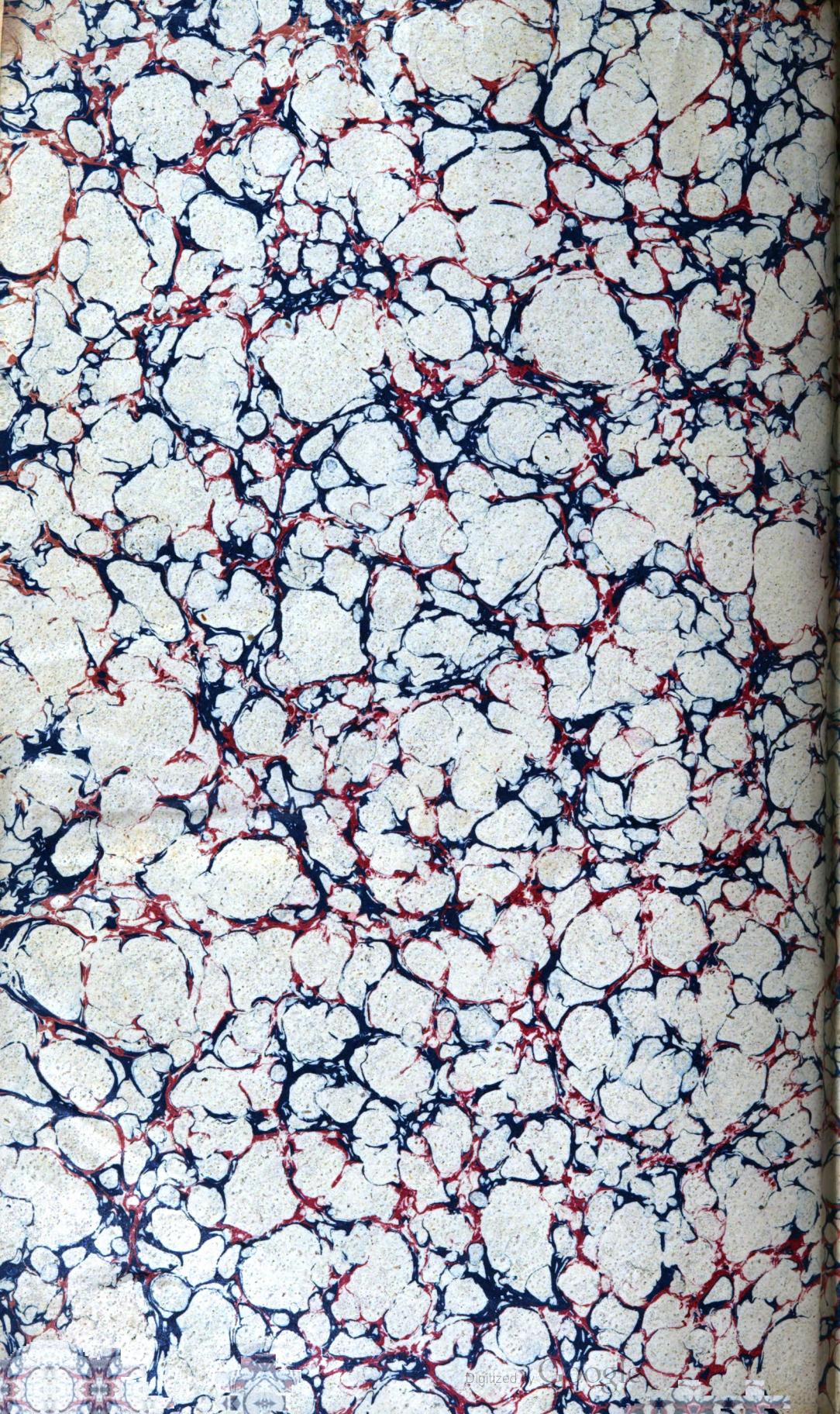


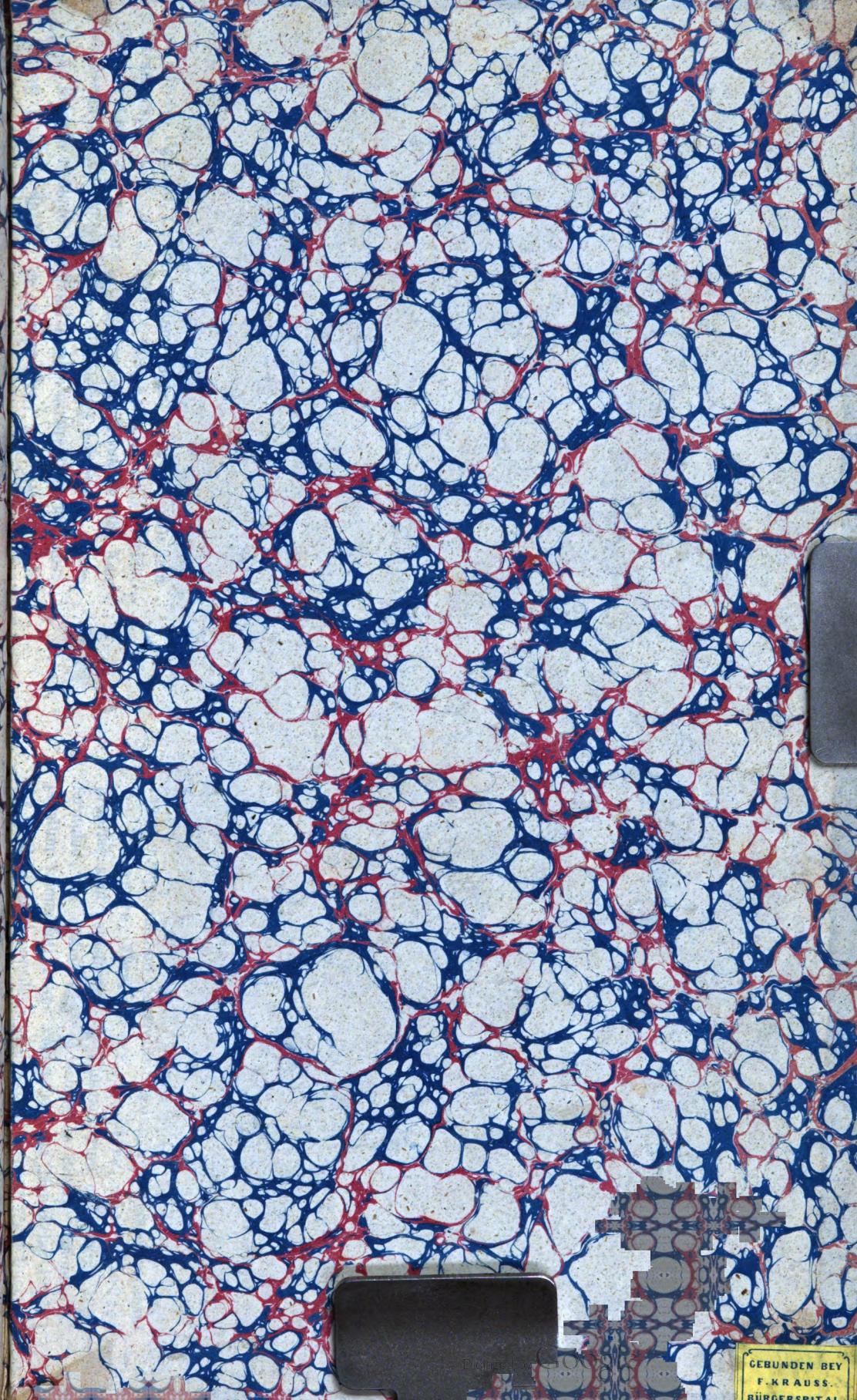


**Österreichische Nationalbibliothek**



**+Z174563709**





Digitized by Google

GEBUNDEN BEY

F. KRAUSS.

BÜRGERSPITAL

